# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. ABOUT FILEHOLD .................................................................................................................. 1

2. ACCESSING FILEHOLD ....................................................................................................... 1
   2.1. FILEHOLD DESKTOP APPLICATION (FDA) ................................................................. 1
   2.1.1. FDA CONNECTION OPTIONS ............................................................................... 2
   2.1.2. LOGGING INTO THE FDA ...................................................................................... 3
   2.1.3. FDA MENUS AND TOOLBARS ............................................................................. 4
   2.1.4. FDA SHORTCUT KEYS .......................................................................................... 5
   2.1.5. SHARING INBOXES .............................................................................................. 6
   2.2. WEB CLIENT .................................................................................................................. 7
   2.2.1. WEB CLIENT MENUS AND TOOLBARS ................................................................. 8
   2.3. MICROSOFT OFFICE APPLICATIONS ......................................................................... 9
   2.3.1. WORKING WITH DOCUMENTS USING MICROSOFT OFFICE APPLICATIONS .... 11
   2.4. LOST OR FORGOTTEN USERNAME AND/OR PASSWORD ........................................ 12

3. UNDERSTANDING ROLES, PERMISSIONS, AND ACCESS TO THE LIBRARY .................. 15
   3.1. DOCUMENT PERMISSION ICONS ............................................................................. 18

4. LIBRARY TREE OVERVIEW ............................................................................................... 20

5. INBOX (SEND TO LIBRARY) .............................................................................................. 22

6. MY FILEHOLD .................................................................................................................... 24
   6.1. MY FAVORITES ............................................................................................................. 24
   6.2. CHECKED OUT DOCUMENTS ..................................................................................... 24
   6.3. DOCUMENT ALERTS ................................................................................................... 24
   6.4. DOCUMENT REMINDERS .......................................................................................... 24
   6.5. RECENTLY ADDED AND RECENTLY ACCESSED ....................................................... 25
   6.6. CALENDAR .................................................................................................................. 25
   6.7. RECENT FOLDERS ...................................................................................................... 26

7. REVIEWS AND APPROVALS (DOCUMENT WORKFLOW) .................................................. 27
   7.1. WORKFLOW OVERVIEW ........................................................................................... 27
   7.2. INITIATING WORKFLOWS .......................................................................................... 28
   7.2.1. MANUALLY INITIATING A WORKFLOW ON A SINGLE DOCUMENT ..................... 29
   7.2.2. INITIATING A WORKFLOW ON MULTIPLE DOCUMENTS .................................... 36
   7.2.3. ADDING OR REMOVING MAIN OR SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS FROM A WORKFLOW .................................................................................................................... 38
   7.2.4. AUTOMATICALLY INITIATING WORKFLOWS ......................................................... 40
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.3. MY TASKS LIST – VIEWING WORKFLOW TASKS</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1. APPROVING DOCUMENTS</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2. REVIEWING DOCUMENTS</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.3. USING MICROSOFT OFFICE APPLICATIONS FOR WORKFLOW TASKS</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.4. RESERVING A TASK IN A WORKFLOW</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.5. CHECKING OUT A DOCUMENT UNDER THE WORKFLOW</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.6. GET A LOCAL COPY OF THE WORKFLOW DOCUMENT</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.7. MANUALLY RESTARTING WORKFLOWS</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.8. DELEGATING TASKS TO ANOTHER USER</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.9. CANCELLING WORKFLOWS</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.10. VIEWING THE WORKFLOW STATUS REPORT FOR A SINGLE TASK</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.11. DISABLING AUTOMATIC REFRESH FOR MY TASKS LIST</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4. VIEWING THE SIGN OFF SHEET</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5. WORKFLOW STATUS REPORT</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.1. ADMINISTRATION PANEL WORKFLOW STATUS REPORT</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.2. WORKFLOW CHANGE LOG</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6. WORKFLOW DASHBOARD</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7. VIEWING THE REVIEW AND APPROVAL HISTORY OF A DOCUMENT</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8. DELEGATING INITIATORS AND PARTICIPANTS</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9. OVERRIDE WORKFLOW TASKS</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.10. WORKFLOW NOTIFICATIONS</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. SEARCHING</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1. HOW TO ACCESS SEARCH</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2. HOW FILEHOLD SEARCHES FOR DOCUMENTS</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.1. GENERAL USAGE</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.2. NOISE WORDS</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.3. FULL TEXT SEARCH - WILDCARD SEARCH LIMITATION SETTING</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3. SEARCH REQUEST TYPES</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.1. WORDS AND PHRASES</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.2. AND CONNECTOR</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.3. OR CONNECTOR</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.4. W/N CONNECTOR (PROXIMITY SEARCH)</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.5. NOT AND NOT W/NUMBER (PROXIMITY SEARCH)</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4. SIMPLE SEARCHES (FULL TEXT SEARCH)</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5. ADVANCED SEARCHES</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of Contents

8.6. SEARCH OPERATOR SELECTORS .................................................................................. 75
8.7. SAVED SEARCHES ..................................................................................................... 77
  8.7.1. REGULAR SAVED SEARCHES .............................................................................. 77
  8.7.2. QUICK SEARCHES ............................................................................................... 78
  8.7.3. EMPTY SEARCH TEMPLATES .............................................................................. 79
8.8. USING FASTFIND ....................................................................................................... 79
8.9. SEARCHING FOR PREVIOUS VERSIONS OF A DOCUMENT ............................................. 80
8.10. SEARCHING FOR DOCUMENTS IN A WORKFLOW ...................................................... 80
8.11. INTEGRATE FILEHOLD SEARCH WITH AN EXTERNAL APPLICATION .......................... 81

9. VIRTUAL FOLDERS ........................................................................................................ 85

10. THE LIBRARY STRUCTURE ......................................................................................... 87
  10.1. CABINETS ................................................................................................................ 88
  10.2. DRAWERS ............................................................................................................... 88
  10.3. FOLDER GROUPS ..................................................................................................... 88
      10.3.1. CALCULATING THE FOLDER GROUP STATISTICS ............................................... 90
  10.4. FOLDERS ................................................................................................................ 90
      10.4.1. VIEWING THE FOLDER STATISTICS ................................................................. 95
      10.4.2. CREATING AUTO-TAGGED FOLDERS ............................................................. 95

11. DOCUMENT ACTIONS AND FUNCTIONS ...................................................................... 97
  11.1. ADDING DOCUMENTS TO FILEHOLD ................................................................. 101
  11.2. DRAGGING AND DROPPING DOCUMENTS ........................................................... 102
  11.3. ADDING DOCUMENTS DIRECTLY FROM THE FILEHOLD DESKTOP APPLICATION .................................................................................................................. 103
  11.4. ADDING DOCUMENTS THROUGH THE FILEHOLD WEB CLIENT ............................ 104
  11.5. ADDING DOCUMENTS FROM MICROSOFT OUTLOOK ........................................... 105
  11.6. ADDING DOCUMENT FROM MICROSOFT OFFICE APPLICATIONS ......................... 108
  11.7. ADDING OFFLINE DOCUMENTS ............................................................................. 108
  11.8. EXPORTING DOCUMENTS IN A VIEW TO A CSV FILE ........................................... 109
  11.9. ENTERING METADATA FOR A DOCUMENT ........................................................ 110
      11.9.1. ENTERING METADATA FOR A SINGLE OR MULTIPLE DOCUMENTS .................. 112
      11.9.2. ENTERING METADATA USING CLICK TO TAG ................................................ 115
      11.9.3. ENTERING METADATA USING DATABASE LOOKUPS ..................................... 119
      11.9.4. EDITING METADATA ....................................................................................... 120
      11.9.5. COPYING METADATA ..................................................................................... 121
      11.9.6. USING THE DOCUMENT URLS ........................................................................ 121
  11.10. SETTING THE DESTINATION FOLDER .................................................................. 121
# Table of Contents

11.11. DELETING FILES .................................................................................................................. 122
11.12. CHECKING IN AND CHECKING OUT DOCUMENTS .......................................................... 122
11.12.1. CHECKING IN DOCUMENTS ......................................................................................... 123
11.13. COPYING OR MOVING FILES ............................................................................................. 125
11.14. MAKING A LOCAL COPY ..................................................................................................... 125
11.15. EMAILING, AND EMAILING AND CHECKING OUT DOCUMENTS ................................. 125
11.16. LINKING DOCUMENTS ......................................................................................................... 128
11.17. CHANGING THE DOCUMENT VERSION OWNER ................................................................. 130
11.18. CREATING SHORTCUTS TO DOCUMENTS ....................................................................... 131
11.19. RENAMING DOCUMENTS .................................................................................................. 131
11.20. EXPORTING DOCUMENTS IN THE FDA .............................................................................. 132
11.21. DOWNLOADING DOCUMENTS TO A LOCAL FOLDER ...................................................... 133
11.22. VIEWING VERSION HISTORY ............................................................................................... 133
11.22.1. VIEWING PREVIOUS VERSIONS OF A DOCUMENT ...................................................... 133
11.22.2. DELETING PREVIOUS VERSIONS .................................................................................... 134
11.22.3. REINSTATING A PREVIOUS VERSION AS THE LATEST VERSION .................................. 134
11.22.4. VIEWING EDITS TO METADATA FOR OLDER DOCUMENT VERSIONS ...................... 135
11.22.5. VIEWING THE DOCUMENT USAGE OF DOCUMENT VERSIONS .................................. 135
11.22.6. VIEWING THE SIGN OFF SHEET .................................................................................... 135
11.22.7. VIEWING WORKFLOW REVIEWS AND APPROVALS .................................................... 136
11.23. SETTING DOCUMENT ALERTS AND REMINDERS ............................................................ 136
11.23.1. MANAGING ALERTS AND REMINDERS ......................................................................... 137

12. LIBRARY ARCHIVE .................................................................................................................. 139

13. USING THE DOCUMENT TRAY ............................................................................................... 140

14. USING THE DOCUMENT VIEWERS .......................................................................................... 142
  14.1. FULL AND PARTIAL SCREEN VIEWS IN THE FDA .............................................................. 142
  14.2. PDF/IMAGE VIEWER ............................................................................................................ 143
  14.2.1. MODIFYING A PDF OR TIFF FILE ................................................................................. 144
  14.2.2. MODIFYING AN IMAGE FILE ....................................................................................... 145
  14.2.3. OTHER ACTIONS OF THE PDF/IMAGE VIEWER ............................................................ 146
  14.3. FILEHOLD VIEWER LEVEL 1 AND 2 .................................................................................... 146

15. SETTING PREFERENCES ......................................................................................................... 151
  15.1. USER PREFERENCES .......................................................................................................... 151
  15.2. VIEW PREFERENCES ........................................................................................................... 157
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15.2.1.</td>
<td>Creating Ad-Hoc Views ....................................................................</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.2.2.</td>
<td>Showing The Review or Approval Status In The Folder View ................</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.2.3.</td>
<td>Setting The Default Cabinet Drawer, Folder Group, Virtual Folder, Or Saved Search View ..</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.3.</td>
<td>Alert Preferences ...........................................................................</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.4.</td>
<td>Workflow Preferences ......................................................................</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5.</td>
<td>FastFind Preferences ......................................................................</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5.1.</td>
<td>Changing The FastFind Keyboard Shortcuts ....................................</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.6.</td>
<td>Reset My Password (Web Client) ..................................................</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Working Documents ..........................................................................</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Watched Folders ............................................................................</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Viewing All Files In Transfer ....................................................</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>FileHold Courier ...........................................................................</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.1.</td>
<td>Initiating A Courier Transmission ................................................</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2.</td>
<td>Viewing Documents In The Courier Portal ......................................</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.3.</td>
<td>Approving Documents In The Courier Portal ....................................</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.4.</td>
<td>Courier Transmission Report .......................................................</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>WebCap – Web Browser Scanning ....................................................</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.1.</td>
<td>Using WebCap ................................................................................</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.2.</td>
<td>Installing The Scanner Twain Driver ............................................</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.</td>
<td>Installing The TWAIN Web Connector ............................................</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.</td>
<td>Connect WebCap To The Scanner ..................................................</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.1.</td>
<td>Scanner Inbox ..............................................................................</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.2.</td>
<td>Scanning, Adding, And Removing Images .......................................</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.3.</td>
<td>Navigating Images .........................................................................</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.4.</td>
<td>Submitting Documents To The Repository ......................................</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.5.</td>
<td>Downloading Images ......................................................................</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5.</td>
<td>Troubleshooting WebCap ...............................................................</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Refreshing The FileHold System ...................................................</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Accessing System And Library Administration ..................................</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Viewing FileHold Reports .................................................................</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>FileHold Help ................................................................................</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX</td>
<td>..................................................................................................</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. ABOUT FILEHOLD

FileHold is a document management software system that is easy to use, easy to install, and is affordable for small to large organizations. It integrates with existing applications and enriches Microsoft SharePoint deployments. Features include web access, search, version control, tagging, workflow, secure user rights, mark up and annotations, redaction, scanning, and OCR and indexing.

Records Management features allow records to be converted to archives, put into legal hold, or be scheduled for final disposition.

2. ACCESSING FILEHOLD

You are able to access FileHold many ways:

- **Web Client** via a web browser.
- **FileHold Desktop Application** (FDA)
- **Microsoft Office applications** including Word, Excel, Outlook, and PowerPoint
- **Mobile FileHold** through your mobile device such as an iPhone or Android

Access to files can be gained through any of the methods by users with a valid FileHold account.

Access via the web client can occur using LAN, WAN, an Intranet or over the Internet. Working with files via the web client does not require installation of our document management software. However, to access the system via the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA) or Microsoft Office applications, users will be required to install FDA on their computer.

The web client and the FDA interface are very similar. You can use either to access the document Library but it is recommended that you generally use FDA as it is faster than going over the web and has more advanced functions than the web client. See a list of differences between the Web Client and FDA.

2.1. FILEHOLD DESKTOP APPLICATION (FDA)

The FileHold Desktop Application (FDA) has a very simple, intuitive and familiar Library structure similar to your traditional filing cabinets (cabinets > drawers > folders > documents) and Microsoft Windows Explorer folder hierarchy.
You may have your connection settings set to automatically log into FileHold when you start the FDA. If you have not selected that option, you will need to login manually.

2.1.1. FDA Connection Options

In order to connect to the FileHold server via the web client, FDA, or Microsoft Office applications, you must ensure that you have entered the correct connections settings. The connection settings are set in the FDA. You must have your username, password, know whether it is a locally managed account or domain (Active Directory) account, and the URL path to the FileHold server.

**TO SET THE FDA CONNECTION SETTINGS**

1. Open the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA) and select **File > FileHold Connection Options**.
2. Select the following options that you want to enable:
   - Automatically run FileHold application when I logon to Windows — This option will automatically start up FileHold after you log into your computer.
   - Automatically logon to FileHold Library when Desktop Application starts — This option will automatically log you in after you launch the FDA. You do not need to enter your username and password.
2.1.2. Logging into the FDA

Ensure that the connection options have been configured prior to logging in. You may have your connection settings set to automatically log into FileHold when you start the FDA. If you have not selected that option, you will need to login manually.

TO LOG INTO FDA

1. Open the FDA. If there is not a shortcut to FDA on your desktop, go to Start > Programs > FileHold > FileHold Desktop Application.

2. Select one of the following options:
   - Go to File > Logon to FileHold Server as username — This uses your stored Microsoft Windows or locally managed username and password.
• Go to File > Logon to FileHold Server as… — This allows you to login using an alternative user name and password than the one that is stored in the connection options. Enter a username, password, and select a domain. Click OK.

3. You are now logged into FileHold. Click OK to close the Welcome Screen.
• Select the check box on the Welcome Screen to not display this screen when FDA starts. You can re-enable this screen in the User Preferences.

2.1.3. FDA Menus and Toolbars

The FDA has several methods in which functions can be performed.

• The FileHold toolbar that can be used to perform operations on single or batch (many documents at once) documents such as check out or get a local copy.
• A right-click context sensitive menu where only those functions that can be performed will be available to use.
• The main menu bar where other functions of the FDA can be performed.

The following table describes the functionality of the FDA FileHold Toolbar buttons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Permissions Needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="add_file.png" alt="Add File" /></td>
<td>Add a file to Library</td>
<td>Users with Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="local_copy.png" alt="Make a local copy" /></td>
<td>Makes a copy of the documents to the local user computer.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="check_out.png" alt="Check out" /></td>
<td>Checks out a document for editing.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="link_documents.png" alt="Link documents" /></td>
<td>Creates a link between two or more documents.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Button Description Permissions Needed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Permissions Needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Deletes a document from the Library. Deleted documents can be recovered by a library administrator before a set amount of time. See the <em>Library Administration Guide</em>.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher plus Delete rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>Emails the document as an attachment or as a link in the body of an email.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher rights or higher and email settings have been enabled by the library administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check out and Email</td>
<td>Checks the document out and sends it in an email attachment or as a link in the body of an email.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher rights or higher and email settings have been enabled by the library administrator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.1.4. FDA Shortcut keys

The following are a list of the hotkeys (shortcut keys) found in the FileHold Desktop Application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shortcut Key</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALT + L</td>
<td>Performs a database lookup. Can only be used when the metadata panel is in edit mode and the Lookup button is available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alt + N</td>
<td>Saves the metadata values and moves to the next document in the list (Save and Next). Can only be used when the metadata panel is in edit mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT + Shift + S</td>
<td>Saves the metadata in the metadata pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alt + Y</td>
<td>Invokes Click To Tag when in the metadata panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL + C</td>
<td>Copies information about selected documents from the documents grid to Clipboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL + Shift + O</td>
<td>Adds an offline document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL + Shift + R</td>
<td>Opens the report viewer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL + Shift + V</td>
<td>Opens the document viewer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL + V</td>
<td>Adds files from the Clipboard to the current folder or Inbox. Files can be selected in Windows Explorer and copied using CTRL + C (the source files will not be deleted after uploading) or CTRL + X (the source files will be deleted).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortcut Key</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL+Double-Click</td>
<td>Opens the document in its native application and checks out the document from the Library at the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL+F</td>
<td>Cursor moves to simple “Google” like Search bar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL+Shift+A</td>
<td>Adds a file to the Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL+Shift+F</td>
<td>Adds a folder to the Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL+Shift+L</td>
<td>Logoff from FileHold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL+Shift+P</td>
<td>Show/hide metadata and properties pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTRL+Shift+T</td>
<td>Show/hide the document tray.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double-click</td>
<td>Opens a document in its native application but does not check it out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5</td>
<td>Refreshes the screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.1.5. Sharing Inboxes

When importing documents into FileHold, you can now share the contents of your Inbox with other users if you have sufficient rights.

Documents in the Inbox can be shared between users on the same computer. Sharing your Inbox allows others to file the contents of your Inbox on your behalf. For example, if there is a dedicated scanning station with several people scanning documents to be added into FileHold, all users who can log into the Windows environment of that scanning station will be able to file all the scanned documents in the Inbox. This is because the Inbox is shared between all the users who can log in with a Windows user account.

You can set whether you want to share your Inbox in the Connection Options window. Note that if you change this setting, it won’t take effect until you log off and then log back in.

**NOTE:** The Shared Inbox check box option is only available to users who have at least the Write permission to the common application data folder (usually “C:\ProgramData”), which normally defaults to members of the Administrators group only. See the Manage Imports Tool in the Library Administrator Guide or the Knowledge Base for more information.
2.2. WEB CLIENT

To access the FileHold web client, you will need to use a valid web browser. See the browsers that FileHold supports:

The interface of the web client is similar to that of the FDA. Most functions are identical but there is more end-user functionality in the FDA.

Library Administration and System Administration functions are performed through the web client as well using the Administration Panel.

TO LOG INTO THE FILEHOLD WEB CLIENT

1. Open a web browser and enter the URL for the FileHold login screen. This should be provided by your system administrator. It is usually in the format:
   http(s)://yourcompanyservername/FH/FileHold/WebClient/LoginForm.aspx
   
   **TIP:** It is recommended that you create a bookmark, favourite, or shortcut to the web client URL for easy access.

2. Enter your username, password, and select the domain.

3. Click Log In.

   **NOTE:** If you are using Active Directory in conjunction with FileHold, your administrator may have configured the web browser for authentication. If this is the case, click the Logon with Windows Authentication link on the login page.
2.2.1. Web Client Menus and Toolbars

The Web Client has two methods in which functions can be performed.

- The FileHold Toolbar that can be used to perform operations on single or batch (many documents at once) documents such as check out or get a local copy. To select multiple documents, select the check box next to the document name.

- A context-sensitive menu where only those functions that can be performed will be available to use. The context sensitive menu is accessed by right-clicking on a document name or a level in the library tree.

The following table describes the functionality of the Web Client FileHold toolbar buttons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Permissions Needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Get a copy</td>
<td>Makes a copy of the documents to the local user computer.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check out</td>
<td>Checks out a document for editing.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit metadata</td>
<td>Opens the metadata pane for editing.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link</td>
<td>Creates a link between two or more documents.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move/copy</td>
<td>Moves or copies the document from one area in the Library to another.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher rights or higher and have ownership of the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Users with Organizer rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Deletes a document from the Library. Deleted documents can be recovered by a</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher plus Delete rights, Publisher plus Delete rights, and Organizer plus Delete and higher roles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>library administrator before a set amount of time. See the Library Administration Guide.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher plus Delete rights, Publisher plus Delete rights, and Organizer plus Delete and higher roles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Button</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Permissions Needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convert to offline</td>
<td>Converts the document to an offline document. Offline documents are those documents that are stored outside the FileHold repository, such as a library, file room or filing cabinet.</td>
<td>Users with cabinet administrator rights or higher and are owners of the cabinet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Tray</td>
<td>Adds the document to your document tray.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Virtual folder</td>
<td>Sends the document to a Virtual folder. A Virtual folder must be available or created.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Email</td>
<td>Emails the document as an attachment or as a link in the body of an email.</td>
<td>All users with access to the document and email settings have been enabled by the library administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Email and check out</td>
<td>Checks the document out and sends it in an email attachment or as a link in the body of an email.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher rights or higher and email settings have been enabled by the library administrator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Library archive</td>
<td>Sends the document to the Archive.</td>
<td>Users must be a member of the system administrators / Senior library administrators group OR a member of the library administrators group which is the owner of the cabinet where the document belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Existing Workflow</td>
<td>Adds main or supporting documents to an existing workflow.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher role or higher. User must have access to all added documents and be owner of the document version when adding main documents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiate Workflow &gt; workflow template name</td>
<td>Allows you to select the workflow template name from the list and start a workflow. Selecting more than one document will start a multiple document workflow.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher rights or higher and is owner of the document.* “Unless the ‘Allow non document version owner to initialize workflow” permission setting is enabled. See the System Administration Guide for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.3. MICROSOFT OFFICE APPLICATIONS

FileHold software has tight integration with Microsoft Word, Excel, Outlook, PowerPoint, Visio, or OneNote (2010 and greater) applications to provide a comfortable work environment. The FileHold Office Client (FOC) window is used when opening, browsing, getting a copy, checking in/out, adding attachments, or approving or reviewing documents from within Microsoft Office applications.
The Desktop Application must be installed, running and a user must be logged onto the document management system in order for the FileHold Office Toolbar icons or Menus options to be active.

Microsoft Office 2007 – Add-Ins Tab

Using the FileHold Toolbar and menu commands you can browse the Library, add a document, check in a document, send for approval or review (workflow) and in Microsoft Outlook you can add an attachment to an email from FileHold. See the table below for details.
### Button/Menu item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button/Menu item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Permissions Needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Browse" /> / Browse</td>
<td>Opens the Get From FileHold window where you can select which document you want in the Library.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Add" /> / Add</td>
<td>Opens the Add Document to FileHold window where you can select the location in the Library and enter metadata for the document.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Check-In" /> / Check-In</td>
<td>Opens the Check Document Back Into FileHold window where you can check your document back into the Library.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Review/Approve" /></td>
<td>Allows you to select the document you are reviewing or approving and enter any comments and feedback.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Attach" /> / Attach</td>
<td>Opens the Get From FileHold window where you can select which document you want in the Library to add as an attachment to an email.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2.3.1. Working with Documents using Microsoft Office Applications

The FileHold Office Client (FOC) window allows users to browse the library, get a copy of documents, check them out or into the document management system. Users can also add new files, add approvals or reviews (workflow), or add attachments to emails.

In the FOC window, the Library tree looks and performs the same as it does in the web or desktop applications. Users can also see the associated metadata. In the Get From FileHold window, you can perform various functions such as get a copy of a document, check it out, rename, delete, view version history, and open the file after it has been downloaded.

In the Add Document to FileHold window (shown below), you can select the location in the Library structure for the document, fill out the metadata, close the document before adding to the repository, delete the local copy, and email folder members to notify them that a document has been added to the folder.

To change the document name, click on the name of the document and type a new one.
When opening FileHold from a Microsoft Office application, the Library tree looks and performs the same as it does in the web or desktop applications. Users can also see the associated metadata. In the Get From FileHold window, you can perform various functions such as get a copy of a document, check it out, rename, delete, view version history, and open the file after it has been downloaded.

2.4. LOST OR FORGOTTEN USERNAME AND/OR PASSWORD

In the event that a locally managed user has forgotten their user ID or password, the system administrator can configure FileHold so that two links can be made available on the web client login screen and FDA login screen.

If a user has forgotten their user ID, they are asked to enter their email address. An email containing their user ID is emailed to them.

If a user has forgotten their password and wants to reset it, then the user is prompted to enter their email address and is sent a time-sensitive link in which they will need to use in order to reset their password. Once the link is clicked, the user is prompted to reset their password in the web client. If the time limit on the email expires, then the user will need to resend the reset password request from the login page.

An additional security measure can be put into place using a two-step verification process via a mobile phone. This will send a text message to the user’s mobile phone containing a PIN code. This code is needed to reset the password. See your system administrator for details.

If a mobile phone number is required to reset the password for the user, it can be set by a user in the User Preferences > Contact Information tab > Mobile field.

If your system administrator has not configured these options, you will need to contact them directly.
**TO REQUEST A FORGOTTEN USER ID**

1. From the web client or FDA login screen, click the I forgot my user ID link.
2. Enter your email address and click Recover.
3. The message “If the address matches a local account in the system you will be sent an email with your user id” displays. Click OK.
4. Your user ID is sent to the email address provided.

**TO RESET A FORGOTTEN PASSWORD**

1. From the web client or FDA login screen, click the I forgot my password link.
2. Enter your email address and click Recover.
3. The message “If the address matches a local account in the system you will be sent a time limited email with password reset instructions” displays. Click OK.
4. An email is sent to the address provided. The email contains a time sensitive link to reset the password. If the link provided in the email is not used with a certain time period, the link expires and you will need to click I forgot my user ID link to be sent another password reset link email. See your system administrator for time limit details.
5. In the email, click or copy and paste the link provided into a browser window.
6. If you are not using the two-step mobile phone verification process:
   - Enter your User ID.
   - Enter your Password twice and click Save. You will now be logged into FileHold with your new password.

7. If you are using the two-step mobile phone verification process:
   - Enter your User ID.
   - Enter your Password twice.
   - Select the Phone Number to be sent the verification code and click Continue. Only a partial phone number is shown in the list.
Enter the 4-digit PIN that was sent to your phone and click **Save**. You will now be logged into FileHold with your new password.
3. UNDERSTANDING ROLES, PERMISSIONS, AND ACCESS TO THE LIBRARY

Only users with the correct role can use and manage certain parts of the Library structure. Your system administrator assigns users to groups and a role to each group. Your library administrator will have created the Library structure and assigned group membership to the cabinets, folders, and document schemas. The role assigned to the group will determine what permissions you have in terms of functions in the system and accessing cabinets, folders, and documents.

All roles provide document emailing capability. Roles higher than Document Publisher have the Courier functionality. These functions can be disabled on a role by role basis by a System Administrator in the FileHold Groups area. See the System Administrator Guide for more information.

NOTE: You can be logged into FDA and the Web Client at the same time but you cannot be logged into two FDAs or web clients at a time. Only one user account can log into FileHold at a time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guest User</td>
<td>A Guest User has read-only rights, meaning they can only get a copy or view documents. Unlike all other roles, many users with the guest user role can log into FileHold at once using a single guest username and password. If multiple people log into FileHold with the same guest user name, the log files records the same user regardless of the actual person that logged into the system. You can purchase low cost packs of guest user connection licenses in groups of 50 to be used with the portal. You will need at least one named user regardless of how many connection licenses are purchased. Guest users may be restricted from downloading or printing documents. With the guest user role you can optionally bypass the login process entirely by setting up a Self-Service Portal with a guest user account. The Self-Service Portal is an optional module that allows users to access FileHold with a special URL. The portal does not require a login as this is done programmatically. The user simply visits the URL and the portal page appears. For more information about guest user licenses, contact <a href="mailto:sales@filehold.com">sales@filehold.com</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Only</td>
<td>A Read-Only user role may only download or open and read documents from FileHold. They cannot edit, delete, or create documents. They can email documents if given this functionality by system administrators. Read-only users may be restricted from downloading or printing documents. Read-only users can participate in workflows but cannot initiate workflows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Publisher</td>
<td>Document Publisher user role can read, get a copy, add, check-in/check-out, edit documents, and metadata. They can move documents that are owned by them. They cannot delete any documents including those which they have added to the system. Document publishers can initiate workflows, participate in workflows, and initiate Courier transmissions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Publisher + Delete</td>
<td>Document Publisher Plus Delete user role can do everything a Document Publisher can do and delete their own documents. They must be the owner of the document in order to delete it. To see the owner of a document, you can look at the version properties in the metadata pane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Publisher                 | Publisher user role can do everything a Document Publisher can do plus:  
  - Create new folders and folder groups.  
  - Copy or move folders that they have already created.  
  - Clone folders and folder groups created by other users and become the owners of the folders / folder groups.  
  - Publishers cannot delete existing documents, folders or folder groups including those which they have added /created. All documents and folders created by the Publisher will be owned by them and they cannot change the ownership. |
| Publisher + Delete         | Publisher plus Delete user role can do everything that a Publisher can do plus delete documents, folders and folder groups group owned (created) by them.                                                   |
| Organizer                 | The Organizer role is for users who are responsible for organizing documents that are scanned or imported into the system or who are assigned to organize documents added by other users. For example, organizers would move the documents generated by scanner operators to their correct folder in the library. Only trusted personnel should be given this role. Organizer role user can:  
  - Move all documents (which they have an access to) in other places in the library including documents which they do not own. In other words, they can move documents that are owned by other users.  
  - Move, copy or clone all folders and folder groups regardless of their ownership. In case of cloning they will become the owners of folder / folder groups. In case of copying and moving the original ownership of folders / folder groups is preserved.  
  - Change folder properties regardless of ownership.  
  - Add folders / folder groups (in which case they will become their owners) and rename folders and folder groups.  
  - Delete documents that they own.  
  - Change document owner regardless of ownership  
  - Convert offline documents to electronic documents  
  - Export documents                                                                                   |
| Organizer + Delete        | Organizer plus Delete role can do everything that Organizers can do plus delete all documents, folders and folder groups regardless of their ownership. This organizer and delete role can only do this within Cabinets, Folders and Schemas that they are a member of.  
This role should be used by trusted personnel only.                                                   |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Cabinet Administration    | Cabinet Administrators can only administer the cabinets that they own; they cannot create cabinets for themselves. They can:  
  • Create, edit, and delete drawers, folder groups and folders and manage their properties (i.e. membership structure).  
  • Access all documents (in Publisher and Delete capacity) from anywhere in the library structure unless they are restricted from that area of the library structure. If they do not have access to the Cabinet and Folder they will not be able to access the documents.  
  • Delete and move electronic records as long they are owners of the cabinet. Electronic records can only be moved to another Cabinet in which they own.  
  • Move documents between cabinets as long as they are owners of the Cabinet. If users need to move documents between Cabinets that they do not own, then use an organizer role instead.  
  • Have access to all document schemas.  
  • Change document owner for documents in the cabinets that they own.  
  • Convert electronic documents to electronic records and vice versa for cabinets that they own.  
  • Convert electronic documents to offline documents for cabinets that they own.  
  • Manually move document to and from the library archive as long as they are the Cabinet owner in the library archive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Library Administration    | Library administrators can perform, within their cabinets, the same functions as Cabinet Administrators plus:  
  • Create cabinets for which they will be the owner of and manage them in the Library.  
  • Access to Library Administration functionality where they can manage metadata fields, schemas, events, set up workflow templates, manage numerous global settings (i.e. viewer permissions, search engine settings, reporting services permissions and more), perform various managerial functions such (as check-in for user, change document owner, recover deleted document etc.) and access many useful reports and usage logs for the cabinets that they own.  
  • Library administrators cannot create cabinets for Cabinet Administrators to own. If a library administrator creates a cabinet, then they are the owners.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Senior Library Administration | Senior library administrators have full control of the FileHold library itself and library administration area. Senior library administrators can create cabinets to be managed by any Library Administrator or Cabinet Administrator.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
Role Name | Description
--- | ---
System Administration | System administrators have complete control of the system. They can perform all of the functions of all other roles. However, the main tasks of the system administrators are to add users to the system (including assigning the initial password and setting requirements for all new passwords and ability to self-register), assign users to their appropriate groups, enable document control numbers and version control numbers, manage user accounts, user groups and the system license pool. The system administrator also has access to various global settings (outbound e-mail, system wide configurations for managing the various documents format conversion permissions etc.) and as well as user activity reports.

**NOTE:** All roles provide document emailing capability. This can be disabled on a role by role basis by a system administrator in the FileHold Groups area. See the [System Administration Guide](#) for more information.

### 3.1. DOCUMENT PERMISSION ICONS

The permission icon to the left of the document indicates the degree of access you have to a file in the document management system. The permission that you have to the document is dependent upon the role you were assigned.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="#" alt="Red, Yellow and Green Dots" /></td>
<td>Red, Yellow and Green Dots indicates that the user has full access to that file in the document management system and is able to read, edit or delete the document. This document is being stored as an electronic document type and not as an electronic record and can therefore have multiple versions associated with it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="#" alt="Red and Yellow Dots" /></td>
<td>Red and Yellow Dots indicate that the user can only read or edit the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="#" alt="Red Dot" /></td>
<td>Red Dot indicates that the user has Read-Only access to the document. This could indicate that the user has read-only permissions, the document is checked out by another user, or under workflow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="#" alt="Gray Dot" /></td>
<td>Gray Dot indicates that the document is an electronic record and not an electronic document type. This means that there will only be one version of this file and there are very strict restrictions for all users for the deletion of this document.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Descriptions for permission icons are outlined below in order from most flexible to most restrictive access to the document.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Rectangle with Dot" /></td>
<td>Rectangle with Dot indicates an external/physical document (called an &quot;off-line document&quot;) for which metadata is available but there is no electronic file associated with it in the documents management system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="H" /></td>
<td>&quot;H&quot; indicates that the document version is hidden while it is undergoing a workflow. The &quot;H&quot; is only seen by those that are observers or participants of the workflow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="I" /></td>
<td>&quot;I&quot; indicates that the current document is under workflow. Only previous versions are available at this time. The &quot;I&quot; is seen by those who are not observers or participants of the workflow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Purple dot" /></td>
<td>Purple dot indicates an electronic document is in the library archive. Electronic records in the archive keep a grey dot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. LIBRARY TREE OVERVIEW

The Library structure view of FileHold provides a familiar and intuitive means to view and search for content held in the document management system. When users first logon to FileHold the file structure appears on the left side. The upper folders, including the My FileHold group, act as a personal space for users to organize and work with items retrieved from the system. The rest of the tree represents the hierarchical arrangement of the entire document management system. The library is at the top and is divided into cabinets, drawers, folder groups and folders. The following is an overview of each major section of the Library file structure.

- **Inbox (Send to Library) Folder** - The Inbox folder contains a list of documents that are queued for processing prior to being sent to FileHold. Note: The Inbox view is only available to users accessing the document management system using the FileHold Desktop Application software. The FileHold Desktop Application is designed to streamline the importing of legacy files into the document management system by removing the bottlenecks associated when adding and classifying files en masse.

- **My FileHold** - The My FileHold section provides users with personalized views of files. The files located in the My FileHold area is local to the user's machine and login credentials.

- **Reviews & Approvals** - See the review or approval tasks you have been assigned and the workflow status report.

- **Recent Folders** – A list of the last 10 used folders is displayed in the tree in FDA, the Select Destination windows, and FileHold Office Client window. The Recent Folders list is not displayed in the Web Client. This is useful for viewing and keeping track of what areas of the document management system you are using and quick access to the documents in those folders.

- **Search** - Provides access to saved search results.

- **Virtual Folders** - Virtual Folders are personalized custom folders that allow users to reference to files located in different folders throughout FileHold without the need for duplicating the files. This allows users to logically group and organize documents for individual use without compromising security or clogging up the document management system with personal folders full of nothing more than duplicates.
- **Reports** (if configured) - Provides easy access to various custom reports developed by the IT department using SQL Server Reporting Services.

- **Library** – Where active documents are stored. FileHold provides a completely customizable hierarchy to store and manage electronic documents and records using a cabinet / drawer / folder group / folder metaphor. Research shows that filing documents 3 to 4 levels deep is the most organized means to store files and provide for efficient retrieval. By expanding the various levels of the library or library archives users are able to browse down to the various folders in the system.

- **Library Archive** – Located at the bottom of the file structure is usually a clone of the library structure. It is meant to be the long term storage space for records or other important documents which are no longer active and were moved to the Library Archive manually or by an automated process based on the document life cycle policies defined by library administrator(s).
5. INBOX (SEND TO LIBRARY)

The FileHold Desktop Application’s (FDA) Inbox is designed to streamline the importing of many documents into the library by removing the bottlenecks associated when adding and classifying files en masse. The Inbox is a queue or list of files that have not yet been copied to the FileHold Server.

The Inbox is specific to each user’s FileHold Desktop Application (FDA) on their workstation and user account profile unless you share your Inbox. Sharing your Inbox allows others to file the contents of your Inbox on your behalf. For example, if there is a dedicated scanning station with several people scanning documents to be added into FileHold, all users who can log into the Windows environment of that scanning station will be able to file all the scanned documents in the Inbox. This is because the Inbox is shared between all the users who can log in with a Windows user account.

The Inbox is the first category visible in the library structure. The Inbox acts as a staging area for documents that are queued for processing on the client machine prior to be sent to the Library. All documents in this list remain on the client machine until they are sent to the library. Files located in the Inbox will only be ready to be sent to the Library once they have both required metadata (tags) values entered and a destination folder associated with each file.

Users can quickly add all the files from a network folder to the Inbox to prepare for filing. Files in the Inbox that still need to have their metadata or destinations set will have a status of “Info Required”. This information is necessary before they can be filed in the Library.

NOTE: The Inbox is not available in the Web Client interface.

The status column lets users know if more information is required before the file can be sent to the document management system. A status of ”Info Required” indicates that the required metadata or a destination have not been set. Once all the required information is set, the status changes to ”Ready to Send” and file can then be uploaded by clicking the Send or Send All (used when multiple files are ready to be sent to the Library). The documents are then sent to their destination folders and are removed from the Inbox.

The Inbox can be sorted by document name, type, coming from, or going to by clicking on the column header name. The columns can be sorted in ascending or descending order by clicking on the arrow button next to the header name.

The following table describes the functions of the Inbox:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ (Add documents)</td>
<td>Adds documents from outside the document management system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove from Inbox</td>
<td>Removes the selected document(s) from the Inbox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Metadata</td>
<td>Allows you to enter the metadata for the selected documents...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select multiple documents to be filed under the same schema and click Edit Metadata. You can set all the metadata fields to the same value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Destination</td>
<td>Allows you to select the destination folder for documents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select multiple documents to be filed under the same folder and click Edit Destination. You can set the destination to the same folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send</td>
<td>Sends a single document to the Library. The metadata and the destination must be set in order to send a document to the repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send All</td>
<td>Sends all documents that have set metadata and destination to the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-File</td>
<td>Automatically files documents in folders. This needs to be configured. See the Library Administration Guide for information on auto-filing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. MY FILEHOLD

The My FileHold area of FileHold provides views of documents that are unique to each user. In other words, it is a personal document workspace for you. This area allows you to access the documents that you use most frequently, documents that you have checked out, documents that are awaiting your review and/or approval, and any alerts or reminders that you have set on documents.

6.1. MY FAVORITES

My Favorites is a list of files that the user has flagged as favorites. To make a document a “favorite”, click the star next to the document name so it turns yellow. A yellow star indicates a favorite document and will show up in the My Favorites list.

6.2. CHECKED OUT DOCUMENTS

Checked Out Documents are a listing of documents that the user has checked out of the system. For more information on how to check a document in and out, see Checking In/Out.

6.3. DOCUMENT ALERTS

Document Alerts is a list of notifications received about documents or folders users have subscribed to. For more information on setting document alerts, see Setting Document Alerts and Reminders.

6.4. DOCUMENT REMINDERS

Document Reminders is a list of reminders to check on certain documents at a set time. For more information on document reminders, see Setting Document Alerts and Reminders.
6.5. **RECENTLY ADDED AND RECENTLY ACCESSED**

Recently Added is a list of files that the user recently added to any location in the document management system in the last 2 weeks.

Recently Accessed is a list of files recently accessed (opened, checked out/in, reviewed, etc.) to any location in the document management system in the last 2 weeks.

![Recently Added and Recently Accessed](image)

6.6. **CALENDAR**

The Calendar helps keep you organized by showing all of your tasks, reminders, and event schedules so you can become more proficient at accomplishing your document management goals.

The Calendar is shown in the My FileHold area of the Library tree in the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA). The Calendar is not available in the Web Client.

![Calendar](image)

**TO ACCESS THE CALENDAR**

1. In FDA, go to **My FileHold > Calendar**.
2. The Calendar can be viewed by the Month, Week, Day, or today (current date). You can also scroll through the months, weeks, days, and years using the scroll arrows.
3. Click **Today** to bring you back to the current date (today’s date).
4. You can click on a day in the Month or Week view to see the details for the day.
5. Click on a task or a reminder in the Day view to open the document in the My Tasks view for tasks or in the My Document Reminders View for reminders.
You can view the following items in the Calendar:

- Active, overdue, and completed workflow tasks:
  - Completed tasks are in a light green background.
  - Due tasks are in a green background with bold text and then number of tasks due in brackets.
  - Overdue tasks are shown in red with bold text and the number of overdue tasks in brackets. A task is considered overdue the day after the task is due. Note that this shows that there is only one task overdue but two tasks were due on that day. Only one task was completed.

- Reminders are displayed in cyan background. Active reminders that have not been marked as read are bolded with the number of active reminders listed in brackets (). Active reminders that have been marked as read will be unbolded. Only the current days’ reminders are considered active. Lapsed and future reminders are not active.

- Scheduled events when the Include Events button is selected. Only users with library administrator roles and above can access this feature. Events are for when documents are set to be archived, converted to a record, disposed, or a user defined event. Events are displayed in yellow background.

6.7. **RECENT FOLDERS**

The Recent Folders area displays a list of the last 10 used folders is displayed in the tree in FDA, the Select Destination windows, and FileHold Office Client window. The Recent Folders list is not displayed in the Web Client. This is useful for viewing and keeping track of what areas of the document management system you are using and quick access to the documents in those folders.
7. REVIEWS AND APPROVALS (DOCUMENT WORKFLOW)

Organizations typically have a number of internal processes for tasks such as order processing, purchase requests, travel expenses, and so on. The FileHold Document Workflow module brings order to these independent processes in a transparent, dynamic, and robust fashion making it a key part of the electronic document cycle.

The document workflow engine is designed to streamline the review and approval process of electronic documents as they proceed through their lifecycle. In collaborative work environments, this labor intensive growth stage of the document is where the most time savings can be realized through the use of workflow.

Document workflow is an optional module of FileHold that can be purchased at any time.

7.1. WORKFLOW OVERVIEW

A workflow contains one or more activities (reviews and approvals) to be completed during the lifecycle of a document. Workflows can be used with all of the document schema formats: document, record and offline. Workflows are created by the library administrator.

The persons charged with reviewing or approving the documents are called participants. The participants can be defined in the workflow or can be left up to the initiator to select. There is no limit to the number of participants in a workflow.

Once a workflow has been initiated, the first activity begins and moves along in the process using the settings in the workflow template.

In a simple document workflow process example, the first activity is to review a document. The participants in this activity are called reviewers. The reviewers are notified by email, and in their task list. The task can also be seen in the calendar. The review activity is designed to facilitate the collection of comments on a document from other users. The review activity is considered complete once one or more of the participants (dependent upon what has been configured in the template) have completed the task of reviewing the document.

Once all tasks in the activity are completed, the activity is considered complete and the next activity begins — the approval activity. The participants in this activity are called approvers.

The approvers are notified by an email and in their task list and responsible for approving, postponing approval, or not approving the document. The task can also be seen in the calendar. The approval activity is designed to facilitate the formal collection of electronic signatures on behalf of its participants for an individual document version in the workflow. The approval activity is considered complete once one or all participants (dependent upon what has been configured in the template) have approved, postponed approval, or not approved the document. The system requires the user to enter their FileHold system password as a secure means of verifying their identity (electronic signature).

During the course of the document workflow, observers can be designated to watch over the workflow instance. Observers are assigned to watch the workflow but do not participate. They usually do not submit reviews or approvals.

On completion of the last activity in the document workflow, it is considered complete. If at any time a workflow approval is not approved, then the workflow is considered terminated and subsequent activities are canceled.

The basic elements and roles of users involved in a simple workflow can be seen in the diagram below.
7.2. INITIATING WORKFLOWS

Initiating a workflow can be done by anyone with Document Publisher or higher permissions as long as they have access to the document(s). Once initiated, workflows are considered complete when all activities are completed, the workflow is canceled, or the document is not approved. Workflows can be initiated:

1. Manually on:
   - A single document
   - Multiple documents

2. Automatically initiated depending on how the schema was configured by the library administrator.
Workflows can only be initiated on the latest version of a document and the file must be checked in. Workflows can be initiated manually on documents once added to the library or they can be automatically initiated depending on how the schema was configured by the library administrator. See Automatically Initiating Workflows for more information.

Users can only initiate workflows from the list of workflow templates that are associated with the document’s schema. The templates are not created by the user; they are created by the library administrator. However, the library administrator can create an “ad-hoc” template that leaves all or some template settings to be defined by the initiator.

You can have up to 20 activities (review or approve) in a workflow template. You can create workflow templates in both the Web Client and the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA).

The following users and roles can initiate workflows:

- The document version owner – The owner of the document version who has Document Publisher role or higher. If the user who owns the document is not the user who is initiating the workflow, enable the permission setting “Ignore document version ownership when initiating workflows or sending Courier transmissions” in the administration panel. See the System Administration Guide for more information.
- Cabinet owner – A cabinet administrator can initiate a workflow on any cabinets that they have ownership of.
- Senior library administrator or higher role – Can initiate a workflow on any documents in the system.

If someone other than the document owner initiates the workflow, the document owner may be an observer if the library administrator has configured the workflow to allow this in the template. For more information on creating workflow templates, see the Library Administration Guide.

Workflows cannot be initiated on the following files in the document management system:

- A document with an existing workflow instance associated with it.
- Documents with a status of “checked out”.
- Shortcuts to documents located elsewhere in the document management system.
- The user does not have correct permissions to initiate the workflow.

7.2.1. Manually Initiating a Workflow on a Single Document

Manually initiating a workflow can be done on a single selected document.

**TO INITIATE A MANUAL WORKFLOW ON A SINGLE DOCUMENT**

1. Right-click on a document that is associated with a schema workflow and select Workflow > Initiate Workflow name.

   **NOTE:** The if the document is not associated with a schema with a workflow template applied to it, this option will not be available.

2. The workflow template opens. In the FDA, click on the coloured areas to expand and contract the different areas of the workflow template. The Web Client does not have a graphical view for the workflow templates.

3. If the library administrator created an ad-hoc workflow template, you may fill in some or all the following fields, depending on how the administrator configured the template:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Workflow Name</td>
<td>Enter a name for the workflow template. A custom naming pattern may have been set up for the workflow name (the name of the workflow that the user sees in notification emails and My Tasks list). Read more about setting up the custom naming pattern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Enter a description for the workflow. It is recommended that you enter as many details as necessary so that users will know exactly what this workflow template is for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide the document version until the workflow is approved</td>
<td>Select the <a href="#">Hide the document version until the workflow is approved</a> check box to hide the version of the document undergoing the workflow from all users except for the document owner, workflow participants, workflow observers, and designated library administrators until such time as it has gone through a workflow instance that contains at least one Approval activity and the result of this activity is that the document is signed off as &quot;Approved&quot;. The document version is hidden only during the workflow process until the document version is approved. The document is available at all other times whether it has been approved or not. All other versions will be available for viewing. <strong>NOTE:</strong> The Hide the document... check box is only enabled when there is at least one approval activity in the workflow template. This check box is not available for review activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convert main documents to electronic records at completion</td>
<td>When the workflow activities are completed, the final version of the electronic document will be converted into an electronic record as a new version. This action is only taken on main documents, not supporting documents. Supporting documents remain untouched. This option does not need to be enabled if the workflow is for electronic record formats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email notification</td>
<td>Enter the number of days or hours before a task is overdue to send a task overdue notification email. To repeat the overdue task email notification after a specified period of time, enter the number of hours to resend the email. For example, if 8 hours is entered, an overdue email will be sent every 8 hours until the task is complete. If the repeat notification time is not set, the notification is sent only one time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Observers</td>
<td>To select a list of observers, click the ... button. In the Select Workflow Observers window, select the groups and/or users to the Current Observers list. Click <strong>OK</strong> when done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow document version owner to observe the workflow</td>
<td>Select the check box to allow the document owner to see the workflow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflow Activity n</td>
<td>In the Workflow Activity n area, select if this activity is an Approval or Review from the drop down list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Enter a title for the activity. For example, “Review step 1”. The title is used in conjunction with the Allow Postpone Approval and restart feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Enter a description for the activity. For example, “This activity is to be sent to all members of group x for review.” The description is used in conjunction with the Allow Postpone Approval and restart feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reviewers</td>
<td>Click … to select the users or groups who will be approving or reviewing the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you select an Approval activity, each participant is assigned the task of approving and signing off on the document. Users will be asked to enter their password when completing an approval activity to confirm their identity. The list of possible participants is limited to users that are able to access the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select the Review activity to solicit feedback on a given document version. As the participants in the activity (reviewers) complete their task, the initiator can collect comments and feedback on the document being reviewed. The list of possible participants is limited to users that are able to access the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When adding groups to an activity, it will be expanded to individual users upon initiating the workflow. Adding or removing users from a group will not affect existing workflows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In the Select Task Participants window, select the groups and/or users to the Current Participants list. Click OK when done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include Document Version Owner</td>
<td>To include the document version owner as a participant in the activity, select the Include Document Version Owner check box. If this option is selected, the list of participants can be left empty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include Workflow Initiator</td>
<td>To include the workflow initiator as a participant in the activity, select the Include Workflow Initiator check box. If this option is selected, the list of participants can be left empty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 of X</td>
<td>If only one in a group of participants is required to approve or review the document, select the 1 of X check box. For example, if only 1 out of the 5 participants is required to approve the document. The first person to complete the task will void and remove the task from all other participants. Users are able to reserve a task with this option enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If a single participant in a group is to be forced to “reserve” the task, select the **Force Reservation** check box. When this option is enabled, it is not possible to submit a review or approval without reserving the task by a single participant. While a task is “reserved” no other participants in the activity will be able to complete the task.

If the Force Reservation option is not enabled, a user can still reserve the task. Note that this option is only available if the 1 of X check box is selected. The table below describes the effect of the 1 of X and Force Reservation settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workflow Template Settings</th>
<th>Effect on Workflow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 of X enabled</td>
<td>Only one participant in a group of participants in the activity can complete the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force Reservation disabled</td>
<td>Participant may “reserve” the task but is not forced to; the task can still be completed without the reservation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First participant to complete the task voids the task for all other participants. The task is removed from their task list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The activity is considered complete after a single participant completes the task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a participant reserves the task:

- Only the participant who reserved the task can complete the task.
- The status of the task changes to “Reserved” for the participant who reserved it.
- The status of the other participants who did not reserve the task changes to “Blocked”.

The participant who reserved the task can undo the reservation which frees the task for the other participants to complete.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Force Reservation</td>
<td><strong>Workflow Template Settings</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 of X enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Force Reservation enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Effect on Workflow</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Only one participant in a group of participants in the activity can complete the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Participant may &quot;reserve&quot; the task but is not forced to; the task can still be completed without the reservation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• First participant to complete the task voids the task for all other participants. The task is removed from their task list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The activity is considered complete after a single participant completes the task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a participant reserves the task:

• Only the participant who reserved the task can complete the task.
• The status of the task changes to “Reserved” for the participant who reserved it.
• The status of the other participants who did not reserve the task changes to “Blocked”.

The participant who reserved the task can undo the reservation which frees the task for the other participants to complete.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allow Check Out</td>
<td>Select the check box to allow a document(s) to be checked out while under the workflow process. In order for this option to be available on the workflow template, it must be enabled in the System Administrator &gt; Permission Settings area. The review or approval cannot be completed while a document in the activity is checked out and the document must be checked in before a review or approval can be submitted. When the document is checked in as a new version, the version number is increased and becomes the version associated with the workflow. If the 1 of X option is selected on the template, then the task is automatically reserved when it is checked out. The task remains reserved after the document is checked in so the user can complete the approval or review task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Require Password</td>
<td>This check box is controlled by the permission setting “Enable optional passwords in workflow templates” in the Administration Panel &gt; System Configuration &gt; General &gt; Permission Settings area. If the permission setting is enabled, the Require Password check box is available for use. If the permission setting is disabled, the Require Password check box is unavailable. See the System Administration Guide for more information. Select the check box if the password is required on an approval or review activity. When enabled, users will be forced to enter their FileHold password when completing the review or approval activity. If disabled, no password is required upon completion of an activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow Postpone Approval</td>
<td>Select the check box to allow documents to be marked as “Approval Postponed” for an approval activity. There are situations where a document cannot be approved because some conditions have not been met but there is nothing wrong with the document itself. The approval option called “Postpone Approval” can be used in these conditions. Once the “postpone approval” option is selected, the workflow is immediately terminated and the status of the document will be set to “Approval Postponed”. A workflow can be started on the same version of a document that has been marked as &quot;approval postponed&quot;. If this option is not enabled then the &quot;approval postponed&quot; option is not available when approving documents. If this option is enabled, then a workflow can be restarted automatically from a particular activity in the workflow template. In the Select one or more steps to restart from area, click the … to select the step or steps to restart from. You can restart the workflow from a previous activity or return back to the initiator. If more than one option is selected, then the participant postponing the workflow is required to select the activity to restart from. If the workflow is returned back to the initiator, then the initiator will need to manually restart or re-initiate the workflow from the workflow status report. See the User Guide for more information. If the workflow is automatically returned back to a previous activity, the participants are notified that the workflow has been restarted. If the activity is 1 of X, only the participant who performed the previous activity is notified (or if delegated to another user, their delegate). The notification to the participants includes the comments made when the activity was marked as Approval Postponed”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convert main documents to PDF</td>
<td>Microsoft Word and PDF documents can be automatically converted to PDF format upon completion of the activity. A summary page can also be appended to the document which can include workflow and document information. Click … to set the PDF conversion options. See Converting Documents to PDF for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due By</td>
<td>In the Due By field, enter the number of days or hours after workflow initiation that the approval or review is due.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Due date is calculated when the workflow is launched, so this field should be configured for the number of days or hours from launch that the first task will be due. For example, if the task needs to be completed in 5 hours, you would enter 0 days and 5 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An exact date and time (fixed) can be specified in the workflow template once the workflow is initiated via manual initiation (if ad hoc).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In subsequent activities, you can enter the number of days or hours after the previous activity is marked as complete for the next activity to be completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Instructions</td>
<td>Enter the instructions for the reviewers or approvers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Repeat the above steps to add up to 20 activities to the workflow template.
5. The order of the activities can be changed using the number drop down list.
6. To remove an activity from the workflow template, click the red X.

7.2.2. Initiating a Workflow on Multiple Documents

In some workflow instances, multiple documents may need to be either reviewed or approved together as a “package”. In this case, multiple document workflows can be used. Multiple document workflows must be initiated manually. Once a group of documents are selected, a workflow can be initiated to create a single workflow instance. In order for the workflow initiation to be successful, all of the documents must meet all the requirements such as belonging to a schema that uses the same workflow template and must be accessible by all participants listed in the template.

Note that your library administrator may have configured the system so that a single workflow is initiated when more than one document is selected (single workflow containing multiple documents) or a separate workflow is initiated for each selected documents (multiple workflows initiated). You may also receive a prompt asking if you’d like to initiate one workflow on multiple documents or a separate workflow for each document.

When a workflow is initiated on multiple documents, these documents are called the “main documents” meaning that all the documents in the package must be approved and/or reviewed together. Main documents can have only one active workflow at a time; they cannot be in another active workflow. Once the documents in the package have been reviewed and/or approved, all of their statuses are changed to the same status such as “reviewed” or “approved”.

Main documents can be added or removed from the workflow after it has been initiated. Notifications are sent to workflow participants when documents are added or removed from the workflow. If a document is removed, the approval status is changed to “Not submitted for approval” and the effect of the “Hide last version…” setting (if applicable) is removed from the document. Documents that have been checked out under the workflow cannot be removed.

Multiple document workflows can also have “supporting documents”. Supporting documents are added to the workflow instance to assist in the review and/or approval process of the main documents. Supporting documents do not have their status changed, the Sign Off Sheet is not updated, and they are not affected by the “Hide last version…” setting. Supporting documents can be added or removed from an existing workflow after the workflow has been initiated for the “main documents”. A supporting document can participate in multiple active workflows; however, it has to be a supporting document. It cannot be a main document in another workflow. A supporting document cannot be checked out or deleted while under the workflow process.

An example workflow on multiple documents and supporting documents is displayed below.
Workflow initiator initiates a review and approve workflow on 3 documents simultaneously

Main documents move together through the workflow as a “package”

Workflow initiator adds supporting documents to the workflow. Supporting documents assist in the review or approval of main documents.

Main documents move together through the workflow as a “package”

Document reviewers review main documents and mark as Reviewed. Supporting documents are viewed but not marked as reviewed.

Document approvers approve main documents and mark as Approved. Supporting documents are viewed but not marked as approved.

All main documents statuses are changed to “Approved”

The status for all supporting documents remain unchanged
**TO INITIATE A WORKFLOW ON MULTIPLE DOCUMENTS**

1. Select all of the documents to go through the workflow as a “package”. You can locate the documents through a search, a virtual folder, My Favourites, document tray, etc.
   - In the FDA, use the **CTRL + click** or **SHIFT + click** to select multiple documents.
   - In the Web Client, select the check boxes next to the document names.
   - Remember that all documents in the package are reviewed and approved together as a single unit. All documents are considered “main documents”.

2. Do one of the following
   - In the FDA, right-click and select **Workflow > Initiate Workflow** template name.
   - In the Web Client, select **Initiate Workflow** from the menu bar and select the template name from the list.
   - Remember that all documents must have the same workflow template as a part of its schema. If all documents do not have the same workflow template in their schemas, then an error message appears stating that the workflow cannot be initiated.

3. If prompted, select one of the following options:
   - Create a single workflow instance associated with all selected documents.
   - Create a separate workflow instance for each selected documents.

4. The workflow template opens. In the FDA, click on the coloured areas to expand and contract the different areas of the workflow template. The Web Client does not have a graphical view for the workflow templates.

5. Depending on how the workflow template is configured, you may be able to modify some or all of the template details. See the table in **Manually Initiating a Workflow** for information on the template details. Click **OK** to start the workflow.

6. You will receive a message stating that the workflow has been successfully initiated. Click **OK**.

7.2.3. **Adding or Removing Main or Supporting Documents from a Workflow**

Documents can be added or removed from an active workflow. Documents can be added as “main” or “supporting” documents. Main documents are all the documents in a "package" must be approved and/or reviewed together. Supporting documents can be added to the workflow instance to assist in the review and/or approval process of the main documents.

Documents can be removed from the “Documents associated with workflow template name” pane. Documents that are checked out cannot be removed from the workflow. Once the document has been removed, the approval status changes to “Not submitted for approval” and the effect of the **"Hide all versions..."** flag is removed.

The following users and roles can add and remove main and supporting documents in workflows:
• Workflow initiator – The workflow initiator who has Document Publisher role or higher and has access to all existing main documents.
• Cabinet owner – A cabinet administrator that has ownership of the cabinets where all the documents in the workflow are stored.
• Senior library administrator or higher role

When adding documents to existing workflows:
• The workflow template associated with the documents must be associated with the same workflow template used to initiate the workflow in its schema.
• All observers and participants must have access to the document.
• Only the last version of the document can be added to a workflow.
• If adding a main document, then the document cannot be associated with another workflow.
• When adding a supporting document, it cannot be checked out or deleted after it has been added.
• When adding a main document to a workflow that has been marked as “approval postponed”, the workflow can be restarted from the first activity in the workflow template if the option “Reset all activities when adding documents to a postponed workflow” is enabled. This allows all of the main documents including the new main document to go through the entire workflow process once again. If the option “Reset all activities when adding documents to a postponed workflow” is not enabled on the template then the workflow is restarted from the activity from which the approval was postponed. See Creating Workflow Templates for more information.

To add a main or supporting document.

1. Select one or more documents to add to the workflow.
2. Right-click on the documents and select Workflow > Add to Existing Workflow.
• Alternatively, in the Web Client select Send To > Existing Workflow from the menu bar.
3. In the “Add Documents to Existing Workflow” window, select the workflow that you want to add the documents to from the list of existing workflows.
4. Select one of the following options and click OK:
• Main documents that are reviewed or approved in the workflow – The selected documents are added to the existing workflow “package” as main documents and will be reviewed and/or approved along with the other main documents.
• Supporting documents associated with the workflow – The selected documents are added to the existing workflow to assist in the review and/or approval of the main documents.
5. The documents are added to the existing workflow and can be seen in the “Documents associated with workflow template name” window as Main and/or Supporting documents.
TO REMOVE A MAIN OR SUPPORTING DOCUMENT.

1. Go to My Tasks or the Workflow Status Report and click the Show Documents link for the workflow you want to remove documents from.

2. In the “Documents associated with workflow template name” window, select the document to be removed and click Remove.

3. At the message prompt, "Are you sure you want to remove the selected documents from the workflow template name?" click OK. The document is removed from the active workflow.

7.2.4. Automatically Initiating Workflows

Workflows can be automatically initiated depending on the configuration of the workflow template. This removes the manual step of initiating a workflow for a document. Since the workflow is triggered automatically, you cannot use an ad-hoc workflow template. You will need to create a defined workflow template to use with this feature. A workflow cannot be automatically initiated when only metadata is edited.

See the Library Administration Guide or Knowledge Base for more information.

7.3. MY TASKS LIST – VIEWING WORKFLOW TASKS

A list of all workflow tasks assigned to a specific user is accessible to them through the document management system by selecting Review and Approvals > My Tasks from the My FileHold area.

There are two types of activities supported by the FileHold: the document approval activity and the document review activity. The My Tasks list shows all active review or approval tasks assigned or delegated to the user. Previously completed or cancelled tasks do not appear in the list. Once a workflow is initiated, an email will be sent to the user (if configured) notifying them of a workflow task.

From the My Tasks list, you can:

- Submit a review or approval.
- Cancel the workflow.
- Delegate a task to another user.
- Reserve or undo a reservation for a task. Tasks that can be reserved are marked with an asterisk *.
7.3.1. Approving Documents

The approval activity is designed to facilitate the formal collection of signatures/approvals for an individual file version. When approving documents, there are three options when completing the task:

- Approve
- Do not approve
- Postpone approval (This option is available only if it has been enabled on the workflow template.)

For documents to be considered “approved” it must pass through a workflow with at least one Approval activity and must be approved by all participants in all activities in the workflow. Only the version of the document that is going through the workflow process is marked as “approved”.

If one of the participants of the approval activity “does not approve” the document(s), then the workflow is automatically terminated. This can happen at any step along the way in a workflow. For example, a file can pass through a first approval activity only to be rejected during a second approval activity. If the participant in the second activity rejects the document the activity is terminated, the workflow is terminated, and the document is flagged as “not approved”.

If a version of a document has been marked as “Not Approved”, the system does not allow a workflow to be done on the same document version. Instead, a new version of file will have to be added to the system and the workflow re-initiated. The document needs to go through the entire workflow process before it can be considered approved and complete. Alternatively, the workflow can be restarted on the same version by an initiator or administrator. See Restarting Workflows for more information.

There are situations where a document cannot be approved because some conditions have not been met but there is nothing wrong with the document itself. An option called “Postpone Approval” can be used in these conditions. Once the “postpone approval” option is selected, the workflow is immediately terminated and the status of the document will be set to “Approval Postponed”. This option is available only if it has been enabled on the workflow template. If a workflow has the option to postpone approval enabled, then the workflow may be automatically restarted with one of the following options:

- Return to the workflow initiator. The initiator would need to manually restart or re-initiate the workflow.
- Automatically return to a previous activity in the workflow template.
- The user postponing the activity can be given an option of selecting from a list of activities to restart from which includes the returning to the initiator or a previous workflow activities.

This feature is useful when a later workflow activity discovers missing information or documents and needs to return to a previous activity. Participants are notified if a workflow is
restarted and includes the comments of the user who postponed the workflow. If the activity is 1 of X, only the participant who completed the previous task is notified.

A document under a workflow approval process can be checked out by a participant if configured in the workflow template. The approval task cannot be completed while a document in the activity is checked out and the document must be checked in before the approval can be submitted. The approval postponed option is only available if it has been enabled on the workflow template. See Creating Workflow Templates for more information.

A document under a workflow approval process can be checked out by a participant if configured in the workflow template. The approval task cannot be completed while a document in the activity is checked out and the document must be checked in before the approval can be submitted.

A feedback document can be attached to any of the approval options. A feedback document is a separate document from the document being approved. It can contain comments or supplemental information. It can be seen in the Workflow Status Report, Review and Approval History (by administrators), and Sign Off Sheet.

Once an approval is submitted, you may need to enter your password to confirm your selected option. This is akin to an electronic signature.

Once a document has been marked as “approved”, it may be converted to a PDF document, and optionally, have workflow information appended to the end of the PDF such as the sign off sheet, approver names, approval date, workflow name, metadata, and so on, after a particular workflow activity has been completed. The following document types can be converted to PDF: docx, doc, dot, docm, dotx, dotm, html, rtf, txt, and pdf. Converter templates are used to define the appended information. One or many templates can be configured, depending on the type of information that is required to be a part of the approved document. Note that for “not approved” or “approval postponed” documents, template information is not appended. An offline document can be used as a part of the workflow and append workflow information. The offline document is converted to an electronic document format and the appended workflow information becomes the document content.

When the system converts a document to a PDF during the workflow process, a new version of the document is added to the library. A global option, “Convert2PdfApproveBothDocumentVersions”, in the web config file in C:\Program Files\FileHold Systems\Application Server\LibraryManager can be configured to allow the option of recording both the source document and the newly created PDF as approved. If this option is not enabled, the new created PDF document will be the only document shown as approved. If it is enabled, the source document will also be marked as approved and both documents will be linked to the signoff sheet and workflow history.

If it is a multiple document workflow, then the approval option selected is applied to all main documents. See Initiating a Workflow on Multiple Documents for more information.

TO APPROVE DOCUMENTS

1. Go to Reviews and Approvals > My Tasks and select a workflow where the task is set to Approve.
2. In the FDA, click Submit Approval from the menu bar or right-click on the task and select Workflow > Submit Approval.
   - In the Web Client, select the check box next to the task name and click Submit Review/Approval from the menu bar.
   - Alternatively in either FDA or Web Client, right-click on the task and select Workflow > Submit Approval.
3. In the Submit Approval window, select one of the following options:
- **I Approve This Document** — The document(s) status changes to “Approved”.
- **I Do Not Approve This Document** — The document status changes to “Not Approved” and the workflow is terminated.
- **I Postpone Approval of This Document** — The document status changes to “Approval Postponed” and the workflow is terminated. This option is available only if it has been enabled on the workflow template. A window may appear where you are able to restart the workflow from a previous activity or return back to the initiator. Select the option to restart from in the list, if presented, and click **OK**.

4. Enter any comments if desired.
5. If desired, attach a feedback document. Click **Browse** to locate the file.
6. To remove the local copy of the feedback document, select the **Remove the local copy**... check box.
7. Click **OK**.
8. You may be required to enter your password to approve, postpone or not approve the document. In the Please Enter Your Password window, enter your FileHold **password** and click **OK**. This step may be optional depending on the workflow template configuration. See your Library Administrator for details.
NOTE: If you log in to FileHold using a domain (Microsoft Active Directory), enter the same password for logging into your network.

9. The task is removed from the My Tasks list. If the document was approved and there is another activity in the workflow, then the task moves to the next assigned participant. If the document was not approved or postponed, then the workflow is terminated.

10. To view the current status of the workflow, see the workflow status report.

7.3.2. Reviewing Documents

The review activity is designed to facilitate the collection of comments and feedback on a file(s) from other users. The review activity can be used alongside one or more review or approval activities. Unlike the approval activity, the review activity does not have the same rules for activity termination. The review approval activity is considered complete once all participants have completed the task of reviewing the document and providing comments and/or feedback documents.

Once a review activity is initiated, the document tasks are automatically routed to the participants and appear in their My Tasks list. Email notification can also alert users when they are assigned a new task of reviewing a document.

As the activity progresses, participants complete their review tasks by providing comments and/or attaching feedback to the file. All comments and feedback files are routed back to the initiator so they can get the feedback they need to continue working on the document.

Documents that are under a workflow can be viewed and/or checked out during the review process (if configured). The review task cannot be completed while a document in the activity is checked out and the document must be checked in before a review can be submitted.

When all participants complete all of the review tasks the activity is completed. The next activity in the workflow will then begin. If this is the last activity in the workflow the workflow will be marked as complete.
If it is a multiple document workflow, then the review status is applied to all main documents. See *Initiating a Workflow on Multiple Documents* for more information.

Once a review is submitted, you may need to enter your password to confirm your review. This is akin to an electronic signature.

**TO REVIEW DOCUMENTS**

1. Go to *Reviews and Approvals > My Tasks* and select a workflow where the task is set to Review.
2. In the FDA, right-click and select *Workflow > Submit Review*.
   - In the Web Client, select the check box next to the task and click *Submit Approval/Review*.
3. In the Comments field, enter your comments for the document.
4. To attach a document containing additional feedback, click *Browse* to add the file.
5. Select the *Remove the local copy of this file after my review feedback has been successfully sent* check box if applicable.

![Submit Review of Purchase order - Laptop](image)

6. Click *OK*.
7. You may be required to enter your password to review the document. In the Please Enter Your Password window, enter your FileHold password and click *OK*. This step may be optional depending on the workflow template configuration. See your Library Administrator for details.
8. The task is removed from your My Tasks list. If there is another activity in the workflow, then the task moves to the next assigned participant.
9. To view the current status of the workflow, see the *workflow status report*. 
7.3.3. Using Microsoft Office Applications for Workflow Tasks

The integration with FileHold allows users to fully interact with their files with Microsoft Office applications. FileHold supports the completion of workflow tasks from the following Microsoft Office applications - Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Outlook, Visio, and OneNote 2010.

The FileHold Add-Ins toolbar allows you to get a copy of the document or check out a document that is under a workflow. You can also attach the current Microsoft Office document as a feedback document for a workflow task and approve/review the document at the same time.

TO GET A COPY OR CHECK OUT A DOCUMENT UNDER WORKFLOW FROM THE ADD-INS TOOLBAR

1. In a Microsoft Office application, go to the Add-Ins toolbar and click Browse.
2. Go to My Tasks list.
3. Right-click on the workflow instance and select Show Documents.
4. Select the document name from the list and select click of the following options:
   - Get a Copy – Opens a copy of the document in the associated application.
   - Check Out – Checks out and opens the document in the associated application. The document is locked down and the workflow task cannot be completed until the document is checked back in. See Checking Out a Document for more information.

TO ADD A MICROSOFT OFFICE DOCUMENT AS A FEEDBACK DOCUMENT

1. Create and save the feedback document locally.
2. Click Send to FileHold > Send Review / Approval Feedback in the FileHold Add-Ins toolbar.
3. Select the document that you are reviewing or approving in the list and click OK.
   - If you are submitting a review, enter your comments, attach a feedback document, and select any of the options and click OK. See more about reviewing documents.
   - Select the Use Active Document check box to use the file that is currently being edited to be attached as a feedback document.
4. If you are approving a document, select whether you approve, not approve or postpone approval on the document(s), enter a feedback document, and select any of the options and click OK. See more about approving documents.
   - If you select the Use Active Document check box, the file that the user is currently editing will be attached as a feedback document.
5. Select the “Close this document after my approval...” check box to close the document in the associated application.
6. Select the “Remove the local copy...” check box to delete the local copy of the feedback document.
7. Click OK. The document is attached as a feedback document and the task is marked as complete.

7.3.4. Reserving a Task in a Workflow

When a library administrator creates a workflow template, they can decide if only one out of a group of participants needs to complete a task using the 1 of X check box in the template. For
example, a sales group consisting of four users is added as the participants in a review task but only one person on the team needs to complete the review document.

If only one person has to complete the task (1 of X option is selected), then the option to “force the reservation” of a task is available. Participants may be forced to “reserve” a task in a workflow depending on how the template was configured. If enabled, this enforces that one user out of the group of participants must reserve the task before the task can be reviewed or approved and the task completed.

If the “force reservation” setting is not enabled in the template, then the task can be completed without a reservation; however a reservation can still be made for the task. The first person to complete the task with or without reserving it automatically voids the task for all other participants in the activity.

Once a task is reserved by a single participant, the task is removed from the My Task list for all other participants in the activity. The status for the user who has the task reserved becomes “Reserved” until the review or approval process is complete. The status for the remaining participants who did not reserve and complete the task becomes “Voided”. If a task is reserved by another participant, a notification email will be sent to all other participants.

In the workflow status report and My Tasks list, tasks that can be reserved are shown with an asterisk. If a task needs to be or can be reserved, the Reserve/Undo Reservation button is available from the My Tasks and Workflow Status Report. If the “force reservation” setting is enabled in the template, then the task must be reserved before it can be approved or reviewed.

Other reservation rules include:

- A future task cannot be reserved.
- A reserved task cannot be overridden or delegated.
- An administrator can reserve or undo a reservation for another user.

A task can be reserved if you have been assigned a task, or if you are a senior library administrator or higher. A cabinet administrator can reserve a task for a user if they have ownership of the cabinet where all of the main workflow documents reside.

For more information on creating workflow templates, see the *Library Administration Guide*.

See the table below for a summary of the rules on the 1 of X and Force Reservation settings in a workflow template.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workflow Template Settings</th>
<th>Effect on Workflow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Workflow Template</td>
<td>Only one participant in a group of participants in the activity can complete the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force Reservation</td>
<td>Participant may “reserve” the task but is not forced to; the task can still be completed without the reservation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 of X</td>
<td>First participant to complete the task voids the task for all other participants. The task is removed from their task list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force Reservation</td>
<td>The activity is considered complete after a single participant completes the task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the participant reserves the task even though it is not enforced:

- Only the participant who reserved the task can complete the task.
- The status of the task changes to “ Reserved” for the participant who reserved it.
- The status of the other participants who did not reserve the task changes to “Blocked”.
- The participant who reserved the task can undo the reservation which frees the task for the other participants to complete.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workflow Template Settings</th>
<th>Effect on Workflow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Workflow Template</td>
<td>Only one participant in a group of participants in the activity can complete the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force Reservation</td>
<td>A participant <strong>must reserve</strong> the task before the task; the task <strong>cannot</strong> be completed without the reservation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 of X</td>
<td>First participant to reserve the task voids the task for all other participants. The task is removed from their task list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force Reservation</td>
<td>The activity is considered complete after the single participant reserves and completes the task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the participant reserves the task:

- Only the participant who reserved the task can complete the task.
- The status of the task changes to “Reserved” for the participant who reserved it.
- The status of the other participants who did not reserve the task changes to “Blocked”.
- The participant who reserved the task can undo the reservation which frees the task for the other participants to complete.

**TO RESERVE A TASK**

**NOTE:** You may be forced to reserve a task prior to being able to complete the task. Check the workflow template to see if the “Force Reservation” setting is enabled.

1. Do one of the following:
From My Tasks, select task that you want to reserve and click Reserve/Undo Reservation. Tasks that can be reserved are marked with an asterisk (*).

From Workflow Status Report, select task that you want to reserve and click Reserve/Undo Reservation. Tasks that can be reserved are marked with an asterisk (*). Only current tasks can be reserved, future tasks cannot.

1. A message appears asking if you are sure that you want the reservation. Click OK. The status for the participant who reserved the task becomes “Reserved”. The task is removed from the My Tasks list of the other participants and their status changes to “Blocked”.

2. After reserving the task, the task can be completed as normal (mark as reviewed/approved). After the task is completed, the status for all other participants changes to “Voided”.

TO UNDO A RESERVATION

1. Select the task that you have reserved from the My Tasks or the Workflow Status Report. The status of the task should be “Reserved”.

2. Click Reserve/Undo Reservation.

3. A message appears asking if you are sure that you want to undo the reservation. Click OK. The task is now unblocked for the other participants and reappears in their My Tasks list. The task can now be reserved by another participant in the activity.

7.3.5. Checking Out a Document Under the Workflow

A document under a workflow process can be checked out by a participant in the active workflow activity. Once a document has been checked out by a participant, it is locked down and cannot be checked out by another participant until the document has been checked back in.

The review or approval cannot be completed while a document in the activity is checked out and the document must be checked in before a review or approval can be submitted. When the document is checked in as a new version, the version number is increased and becomes the version associated with the workflow.

If the 1 of X option is selected on the template, then the task is automatically reserved when it is checked out. The task remains reserved after the document is checked in so the user can complete the approval or review task.

In order to use this feature, a permission setting in the system administrator area must be enabled. See the System Administration Guide for more information. The option “Allow Check Out” must be enabled in the workflow template for each activity in order for a participant to check out a document. If the option is not enabled in the template, then none of the documents in the workflow can be checked out for that activity.

In order to see if any documents have been checked out in the activity, click the Show Documents link from the My Tasks or Workflow Status Report. The status of the document is “Checked out” in the documents list.

TO CHECK OUT A DOCUMENT UNDER A WORKFLOW

1. Go to My Tasks or the Workflow Status Report and click the Show Documents link for the workflow that you want to check out a document from.

2. In the “Documents associated with workflow template name” pane, select the document to be checked out.

3. In theFDA, right-click on the document and select Check Out This Document.
In the Web Client, select the check box next to the document name and click Check Out or right-click on the document and select Check Out This Document.

4. Browse for the folder to check out the document to (if required) and click OK.

5. A message stating that the document is checked out opens. Click OK. The activity is now locked down and cannot be completed (approved/reviewed) until the document is checked back in. When the document is checked in, the workflow is associated with the new version.

**TO CHECK IN A DOCUMENT UNDER A WORKFLOW**

1. Go to My Tasks or the Workflow Status Report and click the Show Documents link next to the workflow name for which you want to check in a document.

2. In the “Documents associated with workflow template name” pane, select the document to be checked in.

3. In the FDA, right-click on the document and select Check In This Document.

4. Select one of the following options and click Check In:
   - Undo Check-out. I have not made any changes.
   - Edit Metadata for this document after check-in.
   - Delete the local copy of the file after it has been successfully checked in (FDA).
   - Email notify all folder members that this document has been Checked-In (may not be available).

**7.3.6. Get a Local Copy of the Workflow Document**

You can save a copy of the document under the workflow process to your local computer. Note that getting a copy of the document does not check out the document. To check out the document, complete the checkout process.

**TO GET A LOCAL COPY OF THE WORKFLOW DOCUMENT**

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the FDA, from My Tasks or Workflow Status Report, click the Show Documents link. In the “Documents associated with workflow template name” window, select the document. Right-click on the document and select Get a Local Copy.
   - In the Web Client, from My Tasks or Workflow Status Report, click the Show Documents link. In the “Documents associated with workflow template name” window, select the check box next to the document name and click Get a Copy.

2. In the FDA, if prompted, select the location to save the document and click OK. The document is copied to that location.

   - In the Web Client, the document is downloaded to the browser's download folder.

**7.3.7. Manually Restarting Workflows**

Workflows can be manually restarted on:

- An active workflow from the first activity to the current one.
• A completed workflow that has been marked as “not approved” or “approval postponed” from the first activity to the one that was marked as not approved or postponed.

Workflows can be manually restarted by:

• Workflow initiator
• Senior library administrator or higher
• Cabinet administrator if they have ownership of the cabinet where all of the main workflow documents reside.

If the workflow is restarted, the current workflow is cancelled (if not already completed) and displays the Restarted status. A new, identical workflow is started and the previous workflow details can be viewed in the Restarted Workflows Status Report by clicking the Restarted link.

If documents are added to a workflow that has been marked as “approval postponed” upon restarting the workflow and a “main document” is added, an administrator can define on the workflow template if all the activities should restart from the first activity. This allows all of the main documents including the new main document to go through the entire workflow process once again. If the “Reset all activities when adding documents to a postponed workflow” option is not enabled on the template then the workflow is restarted from the activity from which the approval was postponed. See your library administrator for details.

If a workflow approval is postponed and later restarted, then the restarted workflow gets canceled, the resulting status of the canceled workflow is “approval postponed”.

Workflows are restarted in the workflow status report.

NOTE: Workflows may be restarted automatically from an activity marked as “approval postponed” if enabled in a workflow template. See your library administrator for details.

TO MANUALLY RESTART A WORKFLOW

1. In the workflow status report, select the activity to be restarted. It can be an active or a completed workflow that was marked as not approved or approval postponed.
2. Click Restart Workflow.
3. Click OK at the alert message. A new workflow is started with notifications being sent to the participants.
4. The old workflow instance status changes to “Restarted” and a new workflow instance is created. The previous workflow details can be viewed by clicking the Restarted link. The Restarted workflows status report show any restarted workflows. From here you can view the documents (click Show documents) and workflow template details (click View details).
7.3.8. Delegating Tasks to Another User

Task delegation is a critical component of any workflow system as it allows work to continue to flow if a participant is either too busy or unavailable. Once delegated, the user will be notified of their new tasks. You can delegate tasks when you are the task owner, the cabinet owner, or a system administrator.

A task cannot be delegated when:

- The task has been reserved. A future task can be delegated.
- The user is already a participant in the activity.

You can automatically delegate all tasks assigned in the event of vacation or extended unavailability. Learn more about setting up automatic task delegation in the workflow preferences.

TO DELEGATE A TASK TO ANOTHER USER

1. Go to Reviews and Approvals > My Tasks or Workflow Status Report. You can delegate tasks from either location.
2. Select the task that you wish to delegate and click Delegate Task.
3. Enter the first or last name or email address of the person you want to delegate the task to and click Find.
4. In the Search Results, select the user and click Select User(s).
5. The task is now updated for the delegated task. In the Workflow Status Report, you can see who the task has been delegated to and who it is on behalf of.

7.3.9. Cancelling Workflows

A workflow can be cancelled by the person who initiated it or by a Library or system administrator. Cancelling a workflow terminates the workflow immediately and notification emails are sent to all participants. See Workflow Notifications for more information.

If a workflow approval is postponed and later restarted, then the restarted workflow gets cancelled, the resulting status of the cancelled workflow is "approval postponed".

TIP: Workflow approvals are automatically terminated if a workflow is marked as not approved or approval postponed by a single participant.

TO CANCEL A WORKFLOW INSTANCE

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the FDA, select the workflow name from My Tasks or Workflow Status Report.
   - In the Web Client, select the check box next to the workflow name from My Tasks or Workflow Status Report.
2. Click Cancel Workflow. All participants in the workflow that had tasks assigned to them will have the tasks automatically removed from their Task List. If they have set preferences to alert them of cancelled tasks by email, an email will be sent.
7.3.10. Viewing the Workflow Status Report for a Single Task

You can view the workflow status report for a single task from the My Tasks List.

**TO VIEW THE STATUS REPORT FOR THE TASK**

1. From the My Tasks list, select a task from the list and click View Workflows.
2. The workflow status report is shown. Click Back to My Tasks to return to the task list.

7.3.11. Disabling Automatic Refresh for My Tasks List

The automatic refresh of the My Tasks list can be disabled in the FileHold Desktop Application. If disabled, the selected task will now remain highlighted until the task is removed or the focus is moved to another task in the list.

If left enabled, the My Tasks list is refreshed every 15 seconds. The task selection and scroll position is restored after the refresh and the previous selected task will be lost. This can cause problems if the user has a large number of tasks assigned to them.

**TO DISABLE THE AUTOMATIC REFRESH FOR THE MY TASKS LIST**

1. From the My Tasks list, to disable refresh, click Automatic refresh of tasks is enabled.
2. To disable automatic refresh, click Automatic refresh of tasks is disabled.

7.4. VIEWING THE SIGN OFF SHEET

In the Sign-Off Sheet, you are able to view the list of participants that have either approved, not approved or postponed approval of the workflow document, when it was signed off, and if they have signed it off on behalf of someone else. If the status is “Voided” this means that the task was reserved and completed by another participant.

The sign off sheet can be viewed from the:

- Folder list
- Search results
- Workflow status report > Show Documents link
- Version History
- My Tasks > Show Documents link

**TO VIEW THE SIGN OFF SHEET**

1. In the FDA, right-click on the document and select Workflow > View Sign-Off Sheet.
2. In the Web Client, click the down arrow on the document name and select Sign Off Sheet.
3. The Sign-Off Sheet pane appears below. Click X to close the pane.

7.5. WORKFLOW STATUS REPORT

The Workflow Status Report shows the status of all workflows that are occurring in the system that the user is the initiator of, a participant in, or an observer. The report shows the tasks from all activities, including those that have not yet started (future tasks). Users can access the Workflow Status Report by clicking on the Reviews and Approvals > Status Report.
The workflow status report can also be accessed in the Administration Panel of the Web Client. This workflow status report contains filters that can be used to narrow down those workflows that the end users have participated in or observed. See Administration Panel Workflow Status Report for details on how to use the filter.

In Reviews and Approvals Status Report pane, all of the workflows that you are involved in are shown. The workflow name, the number of main documents and supporting documents involved with the workflow, the initiator, the start and due dates, the percent completed, and the status of the workflow. The possible statuses of a workflow are:

- **Pending Approval (In progress)** – When the workflow is in progress.
- **Completed** – If the workflow is completed the final approval or review status is shown. (Approved, Not Approved, Approval Postponed, or Reviewed).
- **Cancelled** – If the workflow has been cancelled, the status of Cancelled is shown.
- **Restarted** – The workflow has been restarted manually or automatically.

The number of main and supporting documents in the workflow is shown in the workflow summary line. To view all of the documents that are involved in the workflow, click the Show Documents link. The documents appear in the “Documents associated with <workflow template name>” window. The documents are listed by main or supporting document types. See Multiple Document Workflows for more information. From here, documents can be checked out, emailed, viewed, downloaded, or deleted.

Under each workflow name, click on the + or > symbol to view all the activities in the workflow. The activity order, type (review or approval), the participant, on behalf of (if the task was delegated), comments, attachments, start date, due date, and completion date, the percent (%) completed, and if the task status. The possible statuses of a task are:

- **In Progress (Blank)** – If the task is in progress, then the status is blank (empty).
- **Future (Blank)** – If the task is in the future, then the status is blank (empty).
- **Cancelled** – The workflow has been cancelled.
- **Overridden** – The workflow task has been ignored and no action is taken. The workflow completed or moved on to the next activity in the workflow.
- **Voided** – The task was reserved and completed by another participant. The task was removed and voided from all other participants.
- **Reserved** – The task is currently reserved by a participant.
- **Blocked** – The task is currently reserved by another participant thereby blocking all other participants from the task.

An asterisk (*) appears next to the participant’s names’ for all tasks that are available to be reserved in the Workflow Status report.
To view comments that a participant has left for a document, double-click on **Comments** link. The Comment Details window displays the comments from that participant and task.

To download a copy of the feedback document, click the **Save** icon in the Attachments column. In the FDA, select the location to save the feedback document and click **Save**. The document is downloaded to that location. In the Web Client, the feedback document is saved to the browser’s default download location.

The selected workflow in the Status Report list remains selected until the list is refreshed and the selected workflow is no longer in the list.

**TO TAKE ACTION ON WORKFLOW STATUS REPORT RESULTS**

1. You can take the following actions on a workflow in the list by selecting the check box next the workflow:
   - **Show Documents** (link) – Opens the documents associated with the workflow (main documents and supporting documents) in a separate window.
   - **View Details** (link) — Displays the workflow template.
   - **Restart a Workflow** – Select the completed activity from where to restart the workflow from. Workflows can be restarted on not approved, approval postponed, or an active workflow. Workflows marked as completed and approved cannot have their workflows restarted.
- **Rename Workflow** — To rename the workflow instance, select the workflow from the list and click **Rename Workflow**. Enter the new workflow instance name and click **OK**. Workflows can only be renamed by the initiator or senior administrator if the “allow initiator to define” option has been enabled in the workflow template.

- **Cancel a Workflow** — Allows you to cancel the workflow. Confirm the cancellation by clicking **OK** at the message prompt.

- **Clear Completed** — Clears completed workflows with a status of approved, not approved, approval postponed or reviewed from the list. When clicked the message “Completed workflows will no longer be visible on your personal workflow status report. Check the box below to include postponed workflows”. To remove any postponed workflows from the status report, select the **Clear Postponed Workflows** check box. To retain any postponed workflows, clear the check box. Users may want to keep workflows with a status of approval postponed because the workflow isn’t truly completed.

- **Clear Cancelled** — Removes the completed workflows from the list.

- **Reserve/Undo Reservation** — Allows you to “reserve” or undo the reservation for the selected task. Once a task is reserved by a participant, it prevents all other participants from completing the task and is removed from their task list. The status of the user who reserved the task is “Reserved”. The status of the other users is “Blocked”. Once the task is completed by the participant that reserved the task, the statuses changes to “Reviewed” or “Approved” and the status for all other participants is “Voided”. If the reservation for the task is undone, then the task is available to all participants again. This function is available only if the option **Force Reservation** is enabled in the workflow template. See **Creating Workflow Templates** for more information. An asterisk (*) appears next to the participant’s names for all tasks that are available to be reserved in the Workflow Status report.

- **Override Task** — Overrides a task or activity by moving it to the completed state without affecting the rest of the workflow. Use this feature when a workflow member is absent and the workflow needs to be completed. See **Overriding Workflow Tasks** for more information.

- **Delegate Task** — Delegates a task to another user. Expand the workflow by clicking > next to the workflow name to select a task to delegate and click **Delegate Task**. In the Find People window, enter a name or email address and click **Find Now**. In the Search Results, select the user and click **Select Users**. A message stating the task delegation was successful appears. Click **OK**. A task that is marked as “Reserved” cannot be delegated. Future tasks can be delegated.

- **Print** (FDA Only) — Prints an exact match of what is displayed on the screen.

- **Export** (FDA Only) — When exporting the report, you can choose to export only the workflow or you can include both the workflows and the tasks. The report can be exported to CSV or HTML. Note that for the HTML report, the workflow must be expanded in the Workflow Status Report results to print the tasks. In other words, the HTML report will be exported to look exactly how it appears on the screen.

- **Changes link** (Web Client only) — View the workflow change log.

- **View Details** link — Review the workflow template details. If you are using the FDA, click on the coloured areas to expand and contract the different areas of the workflow template.

To scroll through the workflows or to increase the number of workflows shown on the screen in the Web Client, use the controls at the bottom of the report.
7.5.1. Administration Panel Workflow Status Report

In the Administration Panel Workflow Status Report, you can search for workflows and perform certain actions such as cancel a workflow, get a copy, clear completed and cancelled workflows, override tasks and activities and delegate tasks. The report shows the tasks from all activities, including those that have not yet started (future tasks). The administration panel workflow status report has a number of filters that can be used to narrow down your workflow search results.

**To filter the Workflow Status Report**

1. In the Web Client, go to Administration Panel > Workflow Management > Status Report.
2. Select from the following filter options. Alternatively, to return a list of all workflow events, leave the check boxes clear.
   - **Workflow Status Equals** — Select one of the following: In Progress, Completed, Cancelled, Approval Postponed, Pending Approval, Approved, or Not Approved.
   - **Completed Between** — Enter a minimum and maximum percentage for the amount of workflow completed.
   - **Date Started** — Enter a minimum and maximum date for when the workflow was started.
   - **Due Date** — Enter a minimum and maximum due date for the workflow.
   - **Document Name Contains** — Enter a text string for the name of the document in the workflow.
   - **Workflow Name Contains** — Enter a text string for the name of the workflow.
   - **Initiator is** — Select a user name from the list.
3. Click **Apply Filter**. The search results are displayed below. You can now take actions upon the workflow results.
7.5.2. Workflow Change Log

The workflow change log is accessed through the workflow status report and tracks the changes made to the workflow process such as delegating, restoring, restarting, overriding, and cancelling. The workflow change log is specific to each workflow and is accessed only through the workflow status reports in the Web client.

The workflow change logged can be viewed using the Changes link in the workflow status report. If no changes for the workflow have been logged, the Changes link is not available.

**TO VIEW THE WORKFLOW CHANGE LOG**

1. From the Web Client, go to Administration Panel > Workflow management > Workflow status report.
   - Alternatively, in the Web Client, go to Reviews and Approvals > Workflow status report in the library tree.
2. Locate a workflow and click the Changes link.
3. The following information is displayed in the workflow change log:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action type</td>
<td>Describes the action taken on the workflow. The following information is recorded in the workflow change log:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Manual delegation of a participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Automatic delegation of a participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Restoration of an original participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delegation of an initiator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Restoration of an original initiator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- User overrides a task</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- User cancels a workflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- User restarts a workflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action performer</td>
<td>The user who performed the action. This could be an administrator, initiator, or participant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action date/time</td>
<td>The date and time the action occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity number</td>
<td>The activity number in the workflow that the action occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task number</td>
<td>The task number in the workflow activity that the action occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delegated user</td>
<td>The name of the delegated user (initiator or participant) if applicable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Back to return to the workflow status report.

7.6. WORKFLOW DASHBOARD

The Workflow dashboard gives a high level overview of all the active, completed, cancelled, overdue, and total workflows for all workflow templates in the system. This information is displayed in table and pie chart formats.
The workflow dashboard is only available in the Web Client. Users with read-only and above roles can view the workflow dashboard.

To use the workflow dashboard

1. In the Web Client, go to Administration Panel > Workflow Management > Dashboard.

2. To select the date range to display select or enter a date in the From and To fields. By default, data from the last 3 months is shown.

3. To determine which workflows are displayed in the pie chart, select one of the following options from the drop down list:
   - Active workflows
   - Completed workflows
   - Cancelled workflows
   - Overdue workflows
   - Total workflows

4. Click Refresh to update the information.

7.7. Viewing the review and approval history of a document

The document review and approval history is essentially a snapshot of the workflow status report but only for the selected document. You can view the workflow name, initiator, number
of main documents, completion status plus all the activity information such as participant name, comments, attachments, status and so on.

The document review and approval history can also be exported (CSV or HTML) or printed from the FDA.

**TO VIEW THE WORKFLOW HISTORY**

1. From the My Tasks or Workflow Status Report, click **Show Documents**. The “Documents associated with <workflow template name>” pane opens.
2. Right-click on a document and select **Workflow > View Review and Approval History**.
3. The Document Review and Approval History is displayed. To print (FDA Only) an exact match of what is displayed on the screen, click **Print**.
4. To export the history, click **Export** and select an option. When exporting the report, you can choose to export only the workflow or you can include both the workflows and the tasks. The report can be exported to CSV or HTML. Note that for the HTML report, the workflow must be expanded in the Workflow Status Report results to print the tasks. In other words, the HTML report will be exported to look exactly how it appears on the screen.
5. To return to the previous screen, click **Back to Folder**.

### 7.8. DELEGATING INITIATORs AND PARTICIPANTS

Task delegation is a critical component of any workflow system as it allows work to continue to flow if a participant is either too busy or unavailable. Once delegated, the user will be notified of their new tasks. Task delegation can be accomplished in different areas of the software:

- Workflow status report
- Workflow delegation in the Administration panel

If an employee goes on leave or exits the company, several workflow tasks may need to be delegated en masse. This can be accomplished from the Workflow Delegation menu in the Administration panel. You can delegate both workflow participants and workflow initiators.

- Workflow participants can be delegated by the system administrator, senior library administrators, cabinet owners, workflow initiators and task participants.
- Workflow initiators can be delegated by system administrator, senior library administrators, cabinet owners, and workflow initiators.

If the user is not an administrator, they will only see the tasks which they have initiated or are participating in. Cabinet owners (cabinet administrator and library administrator roles) will only see the workflows for the cabinets they own.

Both participants and initiators can be restored to their original owners in the event that the user comes back, such as from holidays, and needs to resume their duties.
TO DELEGATE A PARTICIPANT TO A TASK

1. In the Web Client > Administration panel, go to Workflow management > Workflow delegation > Participants.

2. Use the following filter criteria and click Apply Filter. To show all workflows, leave filter criteria blank and click Apply Filter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Participant</td>
<td>Select the participant name from the list. This can be the original participant or a delegate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On behalf of</td>
<td>Select the original participant name from the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflow template name contains</td>
<td>Enter a full or partial workflow template name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflow name contains</td>
<td>Enter a full or partial workflow name. This can be the workflow template name or the name that was set up in the custom naming pattern for the workflow template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due date</td>
<td>When the task is due. You can enter a From and/or To date or the number of days from now.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. The following information is displayed in the Search results. Any workflows that are considered complete (approved, not approved, reviewed, or cancelled) are not displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Workflow template name</td>
<td>The name of the workflow template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflow name</td>
<td>This can be the workflow template name or the name that was set up in the custom naming pattern for the workflow template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task description</td>
<td>The task description in the workflow template. This gives the participant any task instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participant</td>
<td>This can be the original participant or a delegate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On behalf of</td>
<td>The name of the original participant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due date</td>
<td>The due date of the task</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflow task status</td>
<td>The status of the task: Pending Approval or Pending Review</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select the check boxes next to the workflow tasks and click Delegate participant.

5. Enter the name of the user and click Find Now.

6. Select the check box next to the user name and click Select User. The participant is changed to the user to which the tasks have been delegated. The On behalf of is the original participant name.

7. To export the search results, click Export as CSV.
8. To view the workflow status report for the task, click the `<workflow name hyperlink>` in the Workflow name column.

**TO RESTORE A PARTICIPANT**

1. In the Web Client > Administration panel, go to **Workflow management > Workflow delegation > Participants**.
2. Use the filter criteria from above and click **Apply Filter**. To show all workflows, leave filter criteria blank and click **Apply Filter**.
3. In the Search results, select one or more workflow tasks that have been assigned to another participant. In other words, there is a user name in the On behalf of column.
4. Click **Restore** participant. The participant is assigned to the original participant owner.

**TO DELEGATE AN INITIATOR**

An initiator of a workflow has the ability to control certain aspects of a workflow from the workflow status report. It is important that the correct initiator is set in order to manage the workflows.

1. In the Web Client > Administration panel, go to **Workflow management > Workflow delegation > Initiators**.
2. Use the following filter criteria and click **Apply Filter**. To show all workflows, leave filter criteria blank and click **Apply Filter**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initiator</td>
<td>Select the initiator name from the list. This can be the original initiator or a delegate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On behalf of</td>
<td>Select the original initiator name from the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflow template name contains</td>
<td>Enter a full or partial workflow template name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflow name contains</td>
<td>Enter a full or partial workflow name. This can be the workflow template name or the name that was set up in the custom naming pattern for the workflow template.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. The following information is displayed in the Search results. Any workflows that are considered complete (approved, not approved, reviewed, or cancelled) are not displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Workflow template name</td>
<td>The name of the workflow template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflow name</td>
<td>This can be the workflow template name or the name that was set up in the custom naming pattern for the workflow template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiator</td>
<td>The name of the person who started the workflow. This can be the original initiator or a delegate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On behalf of</td>
<td>The name of the original initiator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due date</td>
<td>The due date of the task</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The status of the workflow: Pending Approval or Pending Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Select the check boxes next to the workflow tasks and click **Delegate initiator**.
5. Enter the name of the user and click **Find Now**.
6. Select the check box next to the user name and click **Select User**. The initiator is changed to the user to which the tasks have been delegated. The On behalf of is the original initiator name.
7. To export the search results, click **Export as CSV**.
8. To view the workflow status report for the workflow, click the `<workflow name hyperlink>` in the Workflow name column.

**TO RESTORE AN INITIATOR**

1. In the Web Client > Administration panel, go to **Workflow management > Workflow delegation > Initiators**.
2. Use the filter criteria from above and click **Apply Filter**. To show all workflows, leave filter criteria blank and click **Apply Filter**.
3. In the Search results, select one or more workflows that have been assigned to another initiator. In other words, there is a user name in the On behalf of column.
4. Click **Restore initiator**. The participant is assigned to the original initiator owner.

**7.9. OVERRING WORKFLOW TASKS**

In some situations, tasks in a workflow need to be removed from the workflow in progress. Overriding a task removes the task from the workflow instance without affecting the remaining workflow tasks. When a task is overridden for a participant, the status of the task changes to “overridden”. In the case where a document is being approved by other participants, the remaining approvers determine if the document is “approved”.

Overriding a task or activity is only available to the workflow initiator or administrators. A task cannot be overridden if it has been reserved. Completed tasks and activities cannot be overridden. A future task can be overridden.

**TO OVERRIDE A TASK**

1. Go to **Reviews and Approvals > Workflow Status Report** and select the workflow that you want to override.
2. Click the + sign to view the workflow activities/tasks in the workflow. Select the task you want to override and click **Override Task**.
3. The Override Workflow Tasks message opens stating that the task will be pushed to completion without affecting the rest of the workflow. Click **OK**. The status is updated to “Overridden”.

**7.10. WORKFLOW NOTIFICATIONS**

You can receive workflow notifications to your email. These are set in the Workflow Preferences. See **Workflow Preferences** for more information.
8. SEARCHING

You can find a document in FileHold using the powerful and robust search capabilities. There are three methods of searching for documents in FileHold:

- **FastFind** — Use predefined hot keys to search within FileHold from third party applications.
- **Simple Search** — The Simple Search feature is a “Google-like” toolbar that uses a full-text search. FileHold has the ability to recognize, index text and allows users to search content of all your favorite document types including PDF, Microsoft Office, Zip and many more. When searching using the full text search, the system searches both the metadata associated and the content of the document for matches. Full text search is particularly useful for general searches of files stored in a records management system. For example, searching the system for all files that make reference to Sarbanes Oxley.

**TIP**: In order to do partial word searches, you need to use a wildcard (*) before or after the word you are searching for.

- **Advanced Search** — The Advanced Search allows users to use the metadata associated with a document to help locate the file. This is particularly useful when users have a specific piece of information they would like to search for. Up to ten search parameters can be used in an advanced search.

8.1. HOW TO ACCESS SEARCH

There are several methods in accessing the Search function.

- **Click Search, My Saved Searches, or Public Saved Searches in the Library Tree.** Using Search will search all documents in the Library tree.

- **Using the “Google”-like search toolbar located in the top right of the window.** Click the down arrow next to the search toolbar to access the Advanced Search screen.
In Web Client in a Folder View

- Right-click on any area of the library and select Search. This restricts the search to that location in the Library.

- From the simple search screen, click Advanced to access the Advanced Search screen.

8.2. HOW FILEHOLD SEARCHES FOR DOCUMENTS

Users can only retrieve documents to which they have access. Access is based on user rights and permissions. Therefore, in order for a user to see a document in their search results they would have to be a member of the cabinet, folder, and schema that the document belongs to.

The following are how the document management system conducts searches for documents:

- When using the operator “Contains in FTS” or “Does not contain in FTS”, it searches all metadata, file properties, document name, and content (full text indexing) of the documents.

- When using the operator “Contains in DB” or “Does not contain in DB”, it searches the metadata (databases) only. The content of the documents (full text indexing) is ignored.

- FileHold searches for whole words only. Partial words need wildcards (*, ?,) (think of “Google”).

- Metadata searches will return the most relevant of results. Metadata searches also return faster search results as it searches the Microsoft SQL database only.

- When the user invokes search functionality on a cabinet, drawer, folder group, or folder, the search will be restricted to the portion of the file structure from which the search was invoked.

- The contents of the Library Archive are NOT included in the search. To expand the search to include the Library Archive, select the Include in Archive check box in the Advanced Search options.

- Documents that have been deleted from the system are not included in the search.

- Only the latest version of a document is searched. The document usage history and document version history are not included in the search scope. To expand the search to include all document versions, select the Include All Document Versions check box in the Advanced Search options.

- My FileHold, Search, Saved Searches and Virtual Folders contents are not searched because these are links to documents and not where the documents reside.
• Metadata field names that have been edited or deleted are not searched. To search using old metadata field names, select the Search Using Historical Metadata Fields check box in the Advanced Search options.

8.2.1. General Usage

1. Avoid searching for two (2) letter words alone; instead use three (3) letter words or simply use a wild card * before or after the 2 letters. Two letter word searches are not searchable for several technical reasons:
   - The two letters you are searching for can appear in a portion of a word, or very commonly on their own, these if used in the search engine criteria, would greatly slow down and impede the performance of the FileHold search system.
   - In addition, they can also affect the quality of search results because they can appear inside a larger word or on their own with great frequency. This throws off search quality to unacceptable levels.

2. Use whole words when searching for words inside of documents. Simple search acts like a "Google" search and partial words may not return the results you are looking for or may not return any results. If you need to use partial words, use a wildcard (*, ?) with the search.

3. If you use a very generic search term, then the search engine may time out. Try to look for unique words or terms or limit the search to a specific area in the Library. See Full Text Search – Wildcard Search Limitation Setting for more information.

8.2.2. Noise Words

A noise word is a word such as “the” or “if” that is so common that it is not useful in searches. To save time, noise words are not indexed and are ignored in index searches. All single letters are ignored and include the list of words in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Noise Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>a, about, after, all, also, an, and, another, any, are, as, at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>be, because, been, before, being, between, both, but, by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>came, can, come, could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>did, do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>each, even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>for, from, further, furthermore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>get, got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>had, has, have, he, her, here, hi, him, himself, how, however</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>i, if, in, indeed, into, is, it, its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>made, many, me, might, more, moreover, most, much, must, my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>never, not, now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>of, on, only, or, other, our, out, over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.2.3. Full Text Search - Wildcard Search Limitation Setting

When a wildcard search (*) is performed or is used in conjunction with the "contains" or 'does not contain" operators in an Advanced search, using a common term in the repository may return a very large number of intermediate search results that must be processed. A parameter limitation can be set on the number of results returned when a search like this has been performed. Care should be taken not to set a value that makes any typical searches impractical. For most users this value does not need to be changed from the default which returns all specified results that can be found before the full text search timeout expires.

The new entry in the web config file in C:\Program Files\FileHold Systems\Application Server\FullTextSearch is under <appSettings>:

```xml
<add key="LimitNumberOfEntriesToReturn" value="0" />
```

If the value is set to 0, then the limitation is disabled. It is disabled by default.

If a wildcard full text search exceeds the limit set in the web config file then a message is displayed:

"Your search with the CONTAINS operator would consume more server resources than allowed by your system administrator. Consider narrowing your search conditions to reduce the possible results. Your search would have returned {x} documents and your system administrator has set a limit of {x} documents."

8.3. SEARCH REQUEST TYPES

FileHold supports different types of search requests:

- An "any words" search is any sequence of text, like a sentence or a question. In an "any words" search, use quotation marks around phrases, put AND in front of any word or phrase that is required, and NOT in front of a word or phrase to exclude it. Note that the operators + and – are not supported. Examples include:
  - banana pear "apple pie"
  - "apple pie" NOT salad AND "ice cream"
- An "all words" search request is like an "any words" search except that all of the words in the search request must be present for a document to be retrieved. Example:
  - FileHold Systems will find all documents with the words FileHold and systems
- A "boolean" search request consists of a group of words, phrases, or macros linked by connectors such as AND and OR that indicate the relationship between them. Examples include:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Search Request</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apple AND pear</td>
<td>Both words must be present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple OR pear</td>
<td>Either word can be present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple w/5 pear</td>
<td>Apple must occur within 5 words of pear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple NOT w/12 pear</td>
<td>Apple must occur, but not within 12 words of pear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple AND NOT pear</td>
<td>Only apple must be present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple w/5 xfirstword</td>
<td>Apple must occur in the first five words</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Noise words** such as “if” and “the”, are ignored in searches.

Such operators and logics including: stemming, fuzzy, synonym and phonic can be used with “contains” or ‘does not contain” type searches. Because the stemming, fuzzy, synonym and phonic search methods can impact search performance the ability to search using Fuzzy, Synonym and Phonic searching is a global setting configured by the library administrators. See the **Library Administration Guide** or the **Knowledge Base** for more information. However, individuals can search using these logics for individual full text searches. Search terms may include the following special characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>Matches any character.</td>
<td>appl? would match apply and apple but not apples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>Matches any single digit.</td>
<td>N=== would match N123 but not N1234 or Nabc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>Matches any number of characters.</td>
<td>appl* would match apple, application, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use to search for a term where the spelling is in question or there are multiple possible spellings. Note: Use of the * wildcard character near the beginning of a word will slow searches somewhat.</td>
<td><em>cipl</em> would match principle, participle, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ap*ed would match applied, approved, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>Fuzzy search. The number of % characters you add determines the number of differences the search engine will ignore when searching for a word. The position of the % characters determines how many letters at the start of the word have to match exactly.</td>
<td>ba%nana: Word must begin with ba and have at most one difference between it and banana.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b%%anana: Word must begin with b and have at most two differences between it and banana.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#</td>
<td>Phonic search. Phonic searching looks for a word that sounds like the word you are searching for and begins with the same letter.</td>
<td>Put a # in front of the word in your search request. Example: #smith will also find Smithe and Smythe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~</td>
<td>Stemming. Stemming extends a search to cover grammatical variations on a word.</td>
<td>Add a ~ at the end of words that you want stemmed in a search. Example: apply~ also finds applying, applies, and applied. A search for fish would also find fishing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>Synonym search. Synonym searching finds synonyms of a word that you include in a search request.</td>
<td>Put a &amp; at the end of the words you want to use in your search request. A search for fast&amp; would also find quickly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.3.1. Words and Phrases

To search for a phrase, use quotation marks around it, like this: “fruit salad”

If a phrase contains a noise word, the search engine will skip over the noise word when searching for it. For example, a search for statue of liberty would retrieve any document containing the word statue, any intervening word, and the word liberty.

Punctuation inside of a search word is treated as a space. For example:

- can’t would be treated as a phrase consisting of two words: can and t.
- 1843(c)(8)(ii) would become 1843 c 8 ii (four words).

### 8.3.2. AND Connector

Use the AND connector in a search request to connect two expressions, both of which must be found in any document retrieved. For example, apple pie and poached pear would retrieve any document that contains both phrases.

A search for banana and pear w/5 grape would retrieve any document that (1) contains banana, AND (2) contains pear within 5 words of grape.

### 8.3.3. OR Connector

Use the OR connector in a search request to connect two expressions, at least one of which must be found in any document retrieved. For example, apple pie or poached pear would retrieve any document that contained apple pie, poached pear, or both.

### 8.3.4. W/N Connector (Proximity Search)

Use the W/N connector in a search request to specify that one word or phrase must occur within N words of the other. For example, apple w/5 pear would retrieve any document that contained apple within 5 words of pear.

The following are examples of search requests using W/N:

- apple or pear w/5 banana
- apple w/5 banana w/10 pear
- apple and banana w/10 pear
The xfirstword term is useful if you want to limit a search to the beginning of a file. For example, apple w/10 xfirstword would search for apple within 10 words of the beginning of a document.

8.3.5. **NOT and NOT W/Number (Proximity Search)**

NOT allows you to exclude documents from a search. For example: apple sauce AND NOT pear would return all documents with term apple sauce but exclude any that had pear.

NOT standing alone can be the start of a search request. For example, NOT pear would retrieve all documents that did not contain pear.

If NOT is not the first connector in a request, you need to use either AND or OR with NOT such as apple OR NOT pear or NOT apple w/5 pear.

The NOT W/ ("not within") operator allows you to search for a word or phrase not in association with another word or phrase. For example: apple NOT w/20 pear.

Unlike the W/ operator, NOT W/ is not symmetrical. That is, apple NOT w/20 pear is not the same as pear NOT w/20 apple. In the apple NOT w/20 pear request, it searches for apple and excludes cases where apple is too close to pear. In the pear NOT w/20 apple request, it searches for pear and excludes cases where pear is too close to apple.

**CAUTION:** “NOT” cannot be used in conjunction with the search parameter “Folder name”. For example, Folder name contains “not procedures” is not a valid search string.

8.4. **SIMPLE SEARCHES (FULL TEXT SEARCH)**

Simple Search (also called full text searches) in FileHold uses a “Google-like” toolbar to return full-text search results. FileHold has the ability to recognize, index text and allows users to search content of all your favorite document types including PDF, Microsoft Office, Zip and many more. When searching using the full text search, the system searches both the metadata associated and the content of the document for matches. Full text search is particularly useful for general searches of files stored in a records management system. For example, searching the system for all files that make reference to Sarbanes Oxley.

There are three locations where you will find the Simple Search screen:

- Click Search in the Library hierarchy. The simple search form that appears allows users to search the contents of the entire documents management system using the full text search engine.
- The Search field located in the top right hand corner of the FileHold Desktop Application user interface.
- In a folder view of the Web Client.

The search results returned have a relevance ranking. The relevance value (expressed as a percentage) is an approximation of how close the document is to the search criteria.
TO DO A SIMPLE (FULL TEXT) SEARCH

1. In the simple search bar, enter the search term and click Search. The search results are displayed.

8.5. ADVANCED SEARCHES

Advanced Search allows you to search by specific metadata fields and other system recorded information about the document.

Users can combine searches in order to filter results. Users can also choose to search by metadata only, search the archive, include all versions and search using historical metadata fields by checking the boxes at the bottom of the advanced search form.

The parts of an advanced search include:

- Metadata Field Selector – Allows users to select the metadata field they want to search the document management system with.
- Search Operator Selector – Allows users to select an operator to accompany a selected metadata field. The list of operators are Equal to, Between, Greater than >, Less than <, Greater than or equal to >/=, Less than or equal to </=, In the list, or Is Blank. The list of available operators is dependent on the type of Metadata field selected. See Search Operator Selectors for more information.
- Search Criteria Value Select – Allows users to enter a specific search criteria based on the metadata field and operator selected. The value field is based on the type of metadata field selected. By default there is only one value field for each operator. The only exception is the “between” operator that allows users to search between two values such as dates or numbers.
- Add or Remove Search Rows – The [-] and [+] buttons to the right of each row allow users to remove or add (respectively) rows from the search criteria. Multiple search rows are joined automatically joined using the AND operator. Up to 10 rows can be used.

TO ACCESS THE ADVANCED SEARCH FORM

- From the ‘Search and Saved searches’ simple search, click the Advanced link to the right of the search button.
- To access the advanced search from the folder of the document management system view, click on the gray down arrow to the right of the search field icon in the top right corner of the folder view.
- Clicking on a Saved Search.
- Right-clicking on the file structure and selecting **Search**. Remember that the search will automatically be set to start at the library, cabinet, drawer, folder group of folder level depending on where the user right clicks.

**TO DO AN ADVANCED SEARCH**

1. In the Advanced Search screen, use the following table to build search queries. You can use up to 10 search filters to build the search query.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Search option</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Available search operator selectors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| File Or Metadata    | Allows users to add a full text search value to their metadata search criteria. This hybrid approach can be used to combine the best aspects of full text and metadata only searching. The same full text search operators apply to this field as in Full Text Searching. | Contains in FTS
|                     |                                                                             | Does not contain in FTS                                                  |
| Document Name       | Searches the system for a file by the name in the search criteria.          | Contains in FTS
<p>|                     |                                                                             | Does not contain in FTS                                                  |
| Checked Out Status  | Search by the checked out status of:                                        | Equals                                                                    |
|                     | • Checked In                                                               |                                                                             |
|                     | • Checked Out                                                               |                                                                             |
| Person              | Allows users to search by:                                                 | Equals                                                                    |
|                     | • Owned By Me                                                              |                                                                             |
|                     | • Owned By Someone Else                                                    | Does not equal                                                            |
|                     | • Checked Out By Me                                                        | In the list                                                               |
|                     | • Checked Out Be Someone Else                                              | Not in the list                                                           |
| File Date           | File Data menu allows users to search by:                                 | Equals                                                                    |
|                     | • Date Last Modified                                                       |                                                                             |
|                     | • Creation Date                                                            | Not Equals                                                                |
|                     | • Approval Date (for workflow)                                             | In the List                                                               |
|                     |                                                                             | Not In the List                                                           |
|                     |                                                                             | Between                                                                   |
|                     |                                                                             | &gt; (greater than)                                                          |
|                     |                                                                             | &lt; (less than)                                                             |
|                     |                                                                             | &gt;= (greater than or equal to)                                             |
|                     |                                                                             | &lt;= (less than or equal to)                                                |
|                     |                                                                             | At least                                                                   |
|                     |                                                                             | No older than                                                              |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Search option</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Available search operator selectors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Workflow Status &gt; Approval Status</strong></td>
<td>Search by the workflow status of:</td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approved</td>
<td>Does not equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pending Approval</td>
<td>In the list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Not Approved</td>
<td>Not in the list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Not Submitted for Approval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Workflow Status &gt; Review Status</strong></td>
<td>Search by the workflow review status of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Reviewed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pending review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Not submitted for review</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Library Location</strong></td>
<td>Allows users to restrict searching to a specific cabinet, drawer, folder group or folder in the document management system.</td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Document Log Action</strong></td>
<td>Search for documents that have been checked out, downloaded, checked in, copied, moved, archived, viewed, printed, published, added, linked, emailed, etc.</td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In the list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Not in the list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Document Log Date</strong></td>
<td>Search for documents that have had actions performed on them within a date or date range.</td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not Equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In the List</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Not In the List</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; (greater than)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; (less than)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;= (greater than or equal to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;= (less than or equal to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>At least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No older than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Special Fields</strong></td>
<td>Folder name – Search using part of a folder name when the “Contains” operator is selected. Note that no wildcards or dtSearch keywords can be used for this option.</td>
<td>Contains in DB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not contain in DB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not Equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search option</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Available search operator selectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Type</td>
<td>The File Type extension list is dynamically updated and sorted alphabetically. A new file extension entry is dynamically added to the initial standard list upon adding a document with a new file extension for the first time. The list is not updated in FDA until the user logs in and out. Multiple file extensions can be selected when the qualifier is set to “In the list”.</td>
<td>Equals, Does not equal, In the list, Not in the list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileHold ID</td>
<td>The unique ID number given to every version of a document. See <a href="#">Entering Metadata</a>.</td>
<td>Equals, Does not Equal, In the List, Not In the List</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Control No.</td>
<td>Specialized metadata field used to track specific document numbering requirements.</td>
<td>Contains in FTS, Does not contain in FTS, Contains in DB, Does not contain in DB, Equals, Does not equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version Control No.</td>
<td>Like document control numbers, used to track specific document numbering requirements.</td>
<td>Contains in FTS, Does not contain in FTS, Contains in DB, Does not contain in DB, Equals, Does not equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has Markup</td>
<td>User can find documents that have been &quot;Marked Up&quot; using the Brava Viewer Markup Tool.</td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has Link</td>
<td>Users can find all documents that have been linked with other documents.</td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Favorite</td>
<td>Provides a list of documents that are marked as favourites.</td>
<td>Equals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Select any of the following advanced search options:

- Search Metadata Only – Searches the metadata only and not the contents of a document (full-text search).
- Include Archive in Search - Searches the documents in the Library archive and includes any matches in the results. FileHold will search only the Library (current documents) if this option is not selected.
- Include All Document Versions - Searches all versions of the document. FileHold will only search the latest version if this option is not selected.
- Search Using Historical Metadata Fields - If metadata field names and values have been changed over time, you can still search these "historical" items as FileHold keeps track of any changes that have been made.

3. The above options can be saved by clicking the Save icon so they are kept for every advanced search performed.

4. Click Search. The search results are returned. You can continue to add or modify the advanced search criteria, save the search, or export the results to a CSV file.

8.6. SEARCH OPERATOR SELECTORS

The available search operator selectors are:

- Contains in FTS – Searches the full text search index which includes the metadata, document name, file properties, and contents of the document and contains an exact match of the value.
- Does not contain in FTS – Searches the full text search index which includes the metadata, document name, file properties, and contents of the document and the value is not present.
- Contains in DB – Searches only the metadata and contains an exact match of the value. The contents of a document are ignored (full text search index).
- Does not contain in DB – Searches only the metadata and the value is not present. The contents of a document are ignored (full text search index).
- Equals – Matches the specified value.
- Not equal – Does not equal the value specified.
- Is Blank – The value has been left empty (blank).
- Below – Matches anything below a certain level in a drill down menu type field
- > (greater than) – Is larger than the specified value.
- < (less than) – Is less than the specified value.
- >= (greater than or equal to) – Is larger than or equal to the specified value.
- <= (less than or equal to) – Is less than or equal to the specified value.
- In the list – Matches all values entered in the list. Multiple values are separated by commas.
- Not in list – Show all documents that do not match the values entered in the list. Multiple values are separated by commas.
- No older than x number of days before now – The document is not older than x days before today. In other words, 5 days old or less.
- At least x number of days older than now – The document is x many days older than the specified date. In other words, show everything prior to the last 5 days.
- Between - Search for values that are within a set of values, given the minimum and maximum values.

The following table describes the type of search operator selectors that are available for each metadata field type:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metadata Field Type</th>
<th>Available search operator selectors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>Contains in FTS, Does Not Contain in FTS, Contains in DB, Does not Contain in DB, Equals, Not Equals, Is Blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drill down menu</td>
<td>Contains in FTS, Does Not Contain in FTS, Contains in DB, Does not Contain in DB, Equals, Not Equals, Below, Is Blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drop down menu (FileHold managed and database lookup)</td>
<td>Contains in FTS, Does Not Contain in FTS, Contains in DB, Does not Contain in DB, Equals, Not Equals, In the List, Not in the List, Is Blank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Equals, Not Equals, In the List, Not In the List, Between, &gt; (greater than), &lt; (less than), &gt;= (greater than or equal to), &lt;= (less than or equal to), At least, No older than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number / Currency</td>
<td>Equals, Not Equals, In the List, Not In the List, Between, &gt; (greater than), &lt; (less than), &gt;= (greater than or equal to), &lt;= (less than or equal to), Is Blank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.7. SAVED SEARCHES

You can save your advanced search templates as a Saved Search. Every time the search is invoked any new documents that meet the query are brought into the results view.

Saved searches can be made personal or public. An Administrator can create “Public Saved Searches”. Public saved searches can be made available to all users or can be assigned security rights so that only certain groups and users can use the public saved search.

Personal searches saved by the user are called My Saved Searches. These personal saved searches can only be used by the user that created them.

There are three types of saved searches:

- **Regular saved search** – The search template is saved with all of the search criteria including operators and values for the selected criteria.
- **Quick search** – The search template is saved with only one empty variable in the template. When a user runs a quick search, they are required to enter the search term for the empty variable while all other search criteria remain fixed.
- **Empty search** – The search template is saved with empty values for all the search criteria. The user is forced to enter the values prior to running the search.

A default view can be set for each type of saved search so that the search results appear with the correct columns and metadata information.

8.7.1. Regular Saved Searches

A regular saved search repeats a pre-defined search when invoked. All of the set values and operators in the template are used in the search.

**TO SAVE A REGULAR SAVED SEARCH**

1. After performing an advanced search, click Save as Saved Search.
2. In the My Saved Searches window, enter a Name for the search.
3. If you want to make the search accessible to other users, select the Make this saved search public check box (available to administrators only).
4. If this is a public saved search, click Next. Select the groups and/or users that can use this public Saved Search and click Add. Public saved searches can only be created by library administrators or higher roles.
5. Click OK. The Saved Search name is now in the Library hierarchy under Search > My Saved Searches or My Public Saved Searches with an icon 📁.
TO USE A REGULAR SAVED SEARCH
1. Click on the name of the saved search in the My Saved Search or My Public Saved Searches area.
2. The results of the search are displayed. You can modify the search query by adding, changing, or removing any of the filters.

8.7.2. Quick Searches

Quick searches are a type of saved search that allows you to leave a single variable in the advanced search template empty while all other variables remain fixed. When a user runs a quick search, they are required to enter the search term for the empty variable that was set up in the template. The search results that are returned meet all advanced search criteria plus the quick search term the user entered.

Quick searches are useful for conducting searches in Mobile FileHold since search terms cannot be entered for regular saved searches (non-quick type saved searches). Quick searches can be made private or public by administrators just like regular saved searches. Public saved searches can be made available to other users while personal saved searches are only available to the individual that created them.

If a quick search has been set up and configured to be used in conjunction with a FastFind search, then this search cannot be deleted. See FastFind for more information.

A quick search can be integrated for use with external applications. See Integrating FileHold Search with External Applications for more information.

CAUTION: Search variables with an operand of Owned by Me, Checked out by Me, and the operator "Is Blank" cannot be used in quick searches.

TO CREATE A QUICK SEARCH
1. After performing an advanced search, click Save as Saved Search.
2. In the Save this Search window, enter a Name for the quick search or overwrite an existing search.
3. If you want to make the search accessible to other users, select the Make this saved search public check box (available to administrators only).
4. Select the Quick Search Condition check box and select the search variable that you want a user to be able to enter a search term for.
5. If this is a public saved search, click Next. Select the groups and/or users that can use this public Saved Search and click Add. Public saved searches can only be created by library administrators or higher roles.
6. Click OK. The Quick Search name is now in the Library hierarchy under Search > My Saved Searches or My Public Saved Searches with an icon.

TO USE A QUICK SEARCH
1. Click on the name of the quick search in the My Saved Search or My Public Saved Searches area.
2. Enter a value for the single search term and click Search.
3. The results of the search are displayed. You can view or modify the advanced search query by clicking on the Advanced link in the header.
8.7.3. **Empty Search Templates**

When an advanced search is saved, all of the search criteria values can be left empty. This will force the user to enter the search values and click Search once the saved search is selected. This differs from regular saved searches which stores the search values in the template and runs the query automatically.

**To Create an Empty Saved Search**

1. After performing an advanced search, click **Save as Saved Search**.
2. In the Save this Search window, enter a **Name** for the quick search or overwrite an existing search.
3. Select the **Make this saved search empty** check box.
4. If you want to make the search accessible to other users, select the **Make this saved search public** check box.
5. If this is a public saved search, click **Next**. Select the groups and/or users that can use this public Saved Search and click **Add**. Public saved searches can only be created by library administrators or higher roles.
6. Click **OK**. The Empty Saved Search name is now in the Library hierarchy under Search > My Saved Searches or My Public Saved Searches with an icon 📖.

**To Use an Empty Search**

1. Click on the name of the empty saved search in the My Saved Search or My Public Saved Searches area.
2. Enter the values for the search terms and click **Search**. The results of the search are displayed.

8.8. **Using FastFind**

FastFind is an optional feature that can search third party applications using hotkeys and return the search results in FileHold. Users can use keyboard shortcut shortcuts that perform searches directly from the chosen application in the document management system to find relevant data instantly.

Once FastFind is enabled you can use the hotkeys in any third party application. The predefined hotkeys are:

- **Mouse search (Alt+S)** – Activates an on-the-fly screen scraper. When this is done a green bar appears in the bottom-left corner of the user’s desktop screen. Users can now start moving their mouse over screen form objects such as data fields or field labels. The text under the current mouse position is captured and displayed in the green bar. If a user wishes to search with the captured text they may left click to invoke the FileHold search. This initiates the Full Text Search and Metadata search in FileHold and the search results are displayed within the standard search results screen. Pressing the **ESC** button at any time will stop the mouse search mode.

- **Selection search (Ctrl+D)** - Selection Search is similar to the Clipboard Search (and in fact is using Clipboard Search as its internal mechanism), however, it uses a one step process to initiate the search after a user highlights their selection on a business application form or as a part of the content of a document opened in a 3rd part application. Invoking Ctrl+D is all that is needed to initiate search and display results within FileHold application.
Clipboard search (Alt+C) – Users can copy any text from the screen to the Windows clipboard using traditional “Copy” menu option or the Alt+C shortcut available in most Windows applications and then by pressing the Alt+C combination they can activate the Full Text Search andMetadata search in FileHold and the search results are displayed within FileHold on the standard search results screen.

Enable screen OCR search (Alt + F) – Allows you to do a search based on the Click to Tag functionality. Once the shortcut key is invoked, you can click on the text on the screen or draw a bounding box around the text. Then a search is performed in FileHold to meet the selected criteria from the screen.

Since FastFind uses the contents of the clipboard any string displayed on the screen which can be copied to the clipboard (similarly to when using the well-known Cut/Paste sequence in Windows), it can be used as the search criteria including partial highlights of the text strings.

FastFind searches can be based on a full text search (file and metadata search) or a quick search. If based on a quick search, it will only search on that specific search parameter and nothing else in the system (unlike a full text search which will search through everything). Advantages of using up a quick search with FastFind would be to be able to limit the search results. For example, if FastFind was only used to locate an invoice in FileHold from your accounting software, the search results would be limited to what documents would be found using “Invoice Number” quick search. See Quick Searches for more information on configuring quick searches.

FastFind must be a purchased option and enabled before the feature will work. You can also create your own FastFind templates that work with the system. See the Knowledge Base for more information.

To enable FastFind

1. Go to File > Preferences and Settings > FastFind Preferences and select the Enable FastFind check box. See more information about FastFind preferences.
2. Click Apply and then OK.

8.9. Searching for Previous Versions of a Document

For system performance reasons, only the most recent version of the document is included in the search scope. However, users can use the advanced search setting to include all versions of documents (most recent and all previous) stored in the document management.

To search for a previous version of a document

1. In the Advanced Search, select the Include All Document Versions check box.

8.10. Searching for Documents in a Workflow

You can refine your search criteria to search for documents based on their approval status. Using Advanced Search, the user can select the Approval Status metadata field for any document schemas as long as that schema has at least one workflow template associated with it that contains at least one approval activity. Use the Approval Status select box to choose.
whether or not the file being searched for is approved or rejected. The Approval Status field can be used in combination with any other metadata field criteria for searching.

NOTE: If the workflow has NOT been set to hide the file until approval is complete, the file will be able to be seen by all users with access to the document. If the workflow is set to hide the document until approval then it will not be able to be seen by users who are not participants in the workflow instance. All users will be able to see the file once it is approved and the workflow completed.

**To Search for a Document Based on Approval or Review Status**

1. Go to **Advanced Search**.
2. Click **File or Metadata** and select **Workflow Status** and select either **Approval Status** or **Review Status**.
3. In the search operator selector, select one of the following: Equals, Does not equal, In the List, Not in the list
4. In the search criteria value field, select an option from the drop down list. For "in the list" or "not in the list" search operator selectors, use the check boxes to select multiple values. For approval status searches, the following options are available: Approved, Pending Approval, Not Approved, Not Submitted for Approval, or Approval Postponed. For review status searches, the following options are available: Reviewed, Pending Review, or Not Submitted for Review.
5. Add any other search criteria to the advanced search and click **Search**.

**8.11. Integrate FileHold Search with an External Application**

A saved quick search can be invoked through an URL address from an external application. Once the URL is clicked, the search results are displayed in the Web Client. A quick search is a type of saved search where the search template is saved with only one empty variable in the template. When a user runs a quick search, they are required to enter the search term for the empty variable while all other search criteria remain fixed.

A simple tool has been provided for users that do not want to build the URL manually. When a quick search has been created and saved, the URL for the quick search can be created with the URL Builder in the Web Client. In the URL Builder, the server address, the client type (Web Client or Portal Web Client), log in type (local or Active Directory user), UI type (normal, locked or XML), and the quick search value are specified and a URL is generated.

The UI type options determine how the search results are displayed:

- Normal means that the results are displayed in the normal Web Client UI.
- Locked means that the search results are displayed in an embeddable locked view of the web client where only the heading and the document list is found. There would be no processing options, though one of the columns in the search results could be a link to the document for web viewing or downloading. Additional settings are available for modifying the title bar and page numbering in the search results screen when using this option.
- XML means that the search results are returned as an XML document. This can be combined with an XSL style sheet or some other XML processing method to render the precise output the caller desires. The column heading names and column values would be included in the XML as defined in the search view. The XML output include the document ID which can be used to build links for viewing or downloading the documents.

Once the settings for the URL are defined, the URL can be generated. The URL defines the quick saved search name and value(s) for the quick search. For example:
http://<servername>/fh/filehold/webclient/qsearch.aspx?name=<quick_search_name>&value=<search_value>

Where:

- `<servername>` is the name of the server where FileHold is installed
- `<quick_search_name>` is the name of the quick saved search
- `<search_value>` is the operand value that is used for the search. If more than one value is needed, values can be delimited with a ; (semicolon).

Once the URL for the quick search is clicked from an external application, the saved quick search runs and displays the search results in the selected UI type option. If the user is not logged in, the login screen appears first or the user will be logged in using Windows Authentication (single sign on).

The quick saved search can have the default view defined so that the desired information is displayed in the search results every time the URL is clicked.

Here is a basic example of how it might look on company's web site. For this example, the URL is specified in an iframe with the UI type in locked mode.

<iframe src="http://yourservername/FH/FileHold/WebClient/qSearch.aspx?name=Doc+Name&value=fh*&ui=lock" width=600 height=400>

Using the UI Type option that returns XML, the page can be formatted how you want if XML can be interpreted on your website.

The return page for the Web Client can be manually entered to include a returnPath parameter. For example, the user can be returned to the Add Document Wizard:

If you are using the UI in Lock mode, the returnpath can also be entered in the web.config file in C:\Program Files\FileHold Systems\Application Server\WebClient under the <appSettings> area:

```xml
<add key="qSearch_ReturnPage" value="Search_ReturnPage_PLACEHOLDER" />
```

If a value is entered, it is the default place the return button will take the user. If the path is not fully qualified, it is relative to the FileHold server.

To make the Return button invisible, set the value for qSearch_ReturnPage key in web.config to empty. For example:

```xml
<add key="qSearch_ReturnPage" value="" />
```

**TO CREATE AN URL TO RUN A SEARCH FROM AN EXTERNAL APPLICATION**

1. Create a quick search and save it as public saved search. Ensure you assign the correct permissions to the saved quick search.
2. In the Web Client > Public Saved Searches area, right-click on the quick search name and select **URL Builder**.
3. In the URL Server Part field, enter the path to the FileHold server.
4. In the Client Type area, select if the link is accessed through the Web Client or the Portal Web Client (guest portal).
5. In the Login Type area, select if the user is logging in using a username and password, or using single sign on (Active Directory integration). Note that if you are not using Active Directory integration, the single sign on option will not be available.
6. In the UI Type area, select if the results are displayed in normal (Web Client), locked (embedded locked mode) or XML (highly customizable mode).
7. If Locked UI mode was selected, fill out the following information:
   - Select the **Disable title bar** check box if you do not want the Search by URL title bar displayed in the search results.
   - Enter a **Custom Title bar** if needed such as "Documents to be approved". The default title is "Search by URL".
   - Select the **Disable summary bar** if you don’t want the number of search results displayed. For example, "Search Results 1-10 of 52".
   - Select the vertical position of the page numbers in the Page Bars Vertical Position drop down: Top, Bottom, or Top and Bottom.
   - Select the horizontal alignment of the page numbers in the Page Bars Horizontal Alignment drop down: Right, Left or Center.
8. In the quick search parameter area, enter the value to be searched on. Click **Generate URL**.

9. In the URL Builder Result area, the URL address is displayed. Click **Go To Link** to test the link.

10. Once the link is verified and working, copy and paste the link into the external application. Note that there is no way to save this link so you will need to copy and paste it into a Notepad file or similar to retain the link address.

In the example below, a quick search on Approval Status was created with the search value set to Approved. The resulting URL is:


---

**Note**: The number of search results displayed on a page is set in the **View Preferences** for the Search Results view.
9. VIRTUAL FOLDERS

A virtual folder does not contain the actual document; it only holds a pointer back to the document. All virtual folders are private (i.e. unique to the user) unless they are made public. Public virtual folders can be seen by users with the correct permissions to the documents.

- Regular Users can create virtual folders for their own use. They cannot be made public.
- Library administrators or higher roles can create virtual folders and make them private or public. Public virtual folders are seen by all users that are given access. Users with access to a virtual folder will still need the proper permissions to access any documents that are listed.
- Users have access to Public (or shared) Virtual Folders in both the Web Client and FileHold Desktop Application. These folders are created and populated by library administrators to collect and disseminate documents to multiple users. Public Virtual Folders are a perfect way for documents located throughout the FileHold library to be displayed in one place for access by all users that are given access to by library administrators who assign the membership when creating virtual folders. Library administrators can change their personal virtual folders to public and back again.

Virtual folders can be deleted at any time. The documents contained in a virtual folder are not deleted from the system. They will still be located in their original folder.

TO CREATE A VIRTUAL FOLDER

1. Right click on the Virtual folder section in the FileHold Desktop Application and select Add Virtual Folder.
2. Enter the name for the Virtual Folder.
3. If you are a library administrator, you can set the folder as public or private.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click OK if a private folder.
   - Click Next if a public folder.
5. If the Virtual Folder is a public folder, set the security to allow user access and click OK.

TO DELETE A VIRTUAL FOLDER

1. Right-click the Virtual Folder name from the list and select Delete.
2. Click OK on the warning message to proceed with the deletion process.

TO ADD A DOCUMENT TO A VIRTUAL FOLDER

1. Select one or more documents that you want to add to a virtual folder. You can use the SHIFT or CTRL keys to select multiple documents in the FDA. Check the box next to the document name to select documents in the Web Client.
2. Right and select Send To > Virtual Folder.
3. Select the virtual folder to which you want to add the documents or create a new virtual folder.
4. Click OK. The shortcuts to the documents will now be in the virtual folder.
   - ALTERNATIVELY, you can drag and drop one or more documents into the virtual folder.
TO REMOVE A DOCUMENT FROM A VIRTUAL FOLDER

1. Select one or more documents in the virtual folder that you would like to remove. You can use the SHIFT or CTRL keys to select multiple documents in the FDA. Check the box next to the document name to select documents in the web client.

2. Press the CLEAR button at the top of the file list to remove the documents from the virtual folder. This will not delete the documents from the document repository.
10. THE LIBRARY STRUCTURE

All files in FileHold software are stored under the library icon (root folder) shown in the file structure located on the left hand side of interface.

Taking a closer look at the file structure you can see that the document management software uses a real world metaphor for filing. The Library is filled with cabinets that contain drawers that contain folder groups (optional) that contain folders. Only folders can contain documents.

![File Structure Diagram](image)

**NOTE:** Documents are displayed as a list in the display pane to the right of the file structure. Documents can be displayed by selecting the folder they reside in or by searching to gather files from multiple folder locations.

Documents can only be stored in folders in the document management system. Folders can be located directly within drawers or within folder groups.

Access to specific areas of the document management software is controlled by group and user memberships at the cabinet and folder levels. Only users that are members of a cabinet can see the cabinet to access its contents. Once inside the cabinet a user must also be a member of the folders it contains in order to access files contained within the folder. If the user is not a folder member they will not be able to see the folder. Users can see the membership associated with a particular cabinet or folder by right clicking on the cabinet or folder and selecting Properties. Once authenticated to access files inside a folder access to individual document schemas is by schema membership. Users must be a member of schema in order to view files associated with this document schema in the document management system.

**NOTE:** Users who are not members of a folder will not see the folder. To get access a user will have to be added by the owner of the folder or a library or systems administrator.

Along with memberships at the cabinet and folder level, the document management software system, maintains membership permissions by document schema. For example users in the sales department can be restricted to only add, search for and access sales document schemas (invoices, purchase orders and contracts) while users in the HR department can be restricted to only add, search for and access only HR document schemas (expense reports, vacation requests and performance reviews) even if they are located in the same folder. Only a designated library administrator can change the membership associated with a document schema. See setting up and managing document schemas for more information.

In addition to the membership in cabinets, drawers, folders and document schemas, access to documents is controlled by roles that individual users are assigned to. All roles and their related permissions are described on the user role page.

The document level permission icons indicate operations allowed for a given role or provide some additional information regarding the statuses of the documents visible in the folder view.
10.1. CABINETS

Only library administrators, senior library administrators, and system administrators can create cabinets.

In order for a user to see a cabinet they must be a member of the cabinet. Only members of cabinets can see and access its content. In order to manage the access to a particular cabinet, the owner of the cabinet can add and remove member access and permissions. For more information on cabinets, see the Library Administration Guide.

10.2. DRAWERS

Only cabinet administrators, library administrators, senior library administrators, and system administrators can create drawers.

In order for a user to see a drawer they must be a member of the cabinet in which the drawer resides. The availability of actions is dependent on the rights that users have to the cabinet that the drawer resides unless further restrictions have been placed on the drawer by its owner, the library administrator or the Systems Administrator. For more information on drawers, see the Library Administration Guide.

10.3. FOLDER GROUPS

Folder groups are intended to be used as an extra layer of division in the Library structure but their use is optional. Like drawers that divide cabinets into more manageable size; folder groups divide drawers into more suitably sized portions. Folder groups contain only folders.

In order for a user to see a folder group they must be a member of the cabinet in which the folder group resides. The availability of actions is dependent on the rights that users have to the cabinet that the folder group resides unless further restrictions have been placed on the folder group by its owner, the library administrator or the Systems Administrator.

The following actions can be performed on folder groups:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action / Function</th>
<th>What the Function Does</th>
<th>Who Can Access the Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Folder Group</td>
<td>Expands the folder group revealing its contents.</td>
<td>All users with access to the cabinet that the folder group belongs to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>Allows users to restrict their search to files located in the selected folder group.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Properties</td>
<td>Displays the folder group Properties.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Default View</td>
<td>Allows user to select a default view that has been created in the View Preferences.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Folder</td>
<td>Allows user to add a folder to the folder group.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher or higher access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move Folder Group</td>
<td>Moves the folder group to a different drawer.</td>
<td>Users with Organizer or higher access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action / Function</td>
<td>What the Function Does</td>
<td>Who Can Access the Function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy Folder Group</td>
<td>Makes a copy of the folder group including all folders and files it contains.</td>
<td>Users with Organizer or higher access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clone Folder Group</td>
<td>Makes a copy of the folder group and the folders it contains. Does not copy documents in folders.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher or higher access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Folder Group</td>
<td>Deletes the folder group and all items it contains.</td>
<td>Users with Organizer + Delete or higher access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archive Folder Group</td>
<td>Manually sends the contents of the folder group to the Library Archive.</td>
<td>Library administrator or system administrators only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export</td>
<td>Exports all documents in the folders contained in the folder group.</td>
<td>Users with Organizer or higher access.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To Manage Folder Groups**

1. Right-click on a cabinet and select Manage Folder Groups. The folder group list window opens with a list of existing folder groups.
2. To add a folder group, click Add Folder Group.
3. Enter a folder group Name.
4. Select a weight for this folder group from -10 to 10. The lower the weight (such as -10), the higher the folder group name appears in the Library. The higher the weight (such as 10), the lower the folder group name appears in the list. Leave the weight at 0 if you want the folder groups sorted alphabetically.
5. Click Save. The folder group name is added to the list.

**To Assign a Folder Group to a Document Folder**

1. Right-click on a folder in the Library and select Properties.
2. In the Folder Group field, do one of the following:
Select the folder group to which you want this folder to belong from the list.

To create a new folder group, select Add a New Folder Group and enter the name in the New Folder Group Name field.

3. Click OK. The folder is moved into the selected folder group.

TO EDIT OR DELETE A FOLDER GROUP NAME

1. Right-click on a folder group in the Library and select Properties.
2. Click Edit Folder Groups.
3. To edit a folder group name, double-click on a folder group.
4. In the Edit Folder Group window, enter a new name for the folder group and a weight (optional). The lower the weight (such as -10), the higher the folder group name appears in the Library. The higher the weight (such as 10), the lower the folder group name appears in the list. Leave the weight at 0 if you want the folder groups sorted alphabetically.
5. Click Save.
6. To delete the folder group, click Delete.

10.3.1. Calculating the Folder Group Statistics

You are able to see how many folders, documents, number of files and size of the repository that are contained within a folder group by looking at the statistics.

TO CALCULATE THE FOLDER GROUP LEVEL STATISTICS

1. Right-click on a folder group in the tree structure and select Properties.
2. In the folder group properties window, click Calculate. The number of folders, files (latest version), size (in MB), files (all versions) and size of all versions (in MB) is shown. Click Cancel to close the properties.

10.4. FOLDERS

Folders are the level in the library structure where documents reside. Documents can only reside at the folder level. Only users that are members of a particular folder can access the files that reside in that folder.

When a user with a role of Publisher or higher creates a new folder they must associate groups (or users) with the folder in order to protect the contents of the folder from unauthorized users. ONLY groups (or users) associated with a folder will see and have access to the folder. Permissions can be further restricted once the groups or users are assigned as members.

The groups that are available to be members of the folder are inherited from the cabinet in which the folder resides. If you wish to add groups other than the ones that appear in the folder properties, the group must first be added at the cabinet level of the document management system. After the group is added at the cabinet level, the new group will appear in the Available FileHold Group listing in the folder properties security section.

Security on the folder can be modified using the advanced security option. You are able to give a user or group a role that is less than what is already designated to them. For example, you can modify a cabinet administrator’s role to reduce it to document publisher. If a group or user’s permissions are modified using the advanced security option, a red dot appears on the folder that has been modified when the user logs in.
The availability of actions is dependent on the rights that users have to the cabinet that the folder resides unless further restrictions have been placed on the folder by its owner, the library administrator or the Systems Administrator. The following actions can be performed on folders:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action / Function</th>
<th>What the Function Does</th>
<th>Who can Access the Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Folder</td>
<td>Opens the folders and shows the files it contains.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder based on the folder membership.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>Allows users to restrict their search to files located in the selected folder.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Properties</td>
<td>Displays the folder properties.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Default View</td>
<td>Allows user to select a default view that has been created in the View Preferences.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alert Me of Changes</td>
<td>Subscribes the user to be alerted when certain actions are performed on the folder by other users. The types of actions that trigger alerts are managed by the users Alert Preferences. Users can remove folder alerts from the My FileHold: Document alerts page OR select the 'Disable This Alert' option from the folder menu.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modified permissions at the folder level. Cabinet administrator role lowered to document publisher. Red dot appears on folder.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action / Function</th>
<th>What the Function Does</th>
<th>Who can Access the Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable This Alert</td>
<td>Disable the alert for the folder. The user will no longer be alerted when certain actions are performed on this folder. Reactivate the alert by clicking on the 'Alert Me of Changes' option in the folder menu.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move Folder</td>
<td>Moves the folder to a different drawer or folder group.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher or higher access that are the folder owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy Folder</td>
<td>Makes a copy of the folder.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher or higher access that are the folder owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Folder</td>
<td>Deletes the folder and all documents it contains.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher and Delete or higher access that are the folder owner. If the user is Publisher and Delete role they must be also be the owners of all document versions in the folder before they can delete a document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clone Folder</td>
<td>Makes a copy of the folder group and the folders it contains. Does not copy documents in folders.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher or higher access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archive Folder</td>
<td>Manually sends the contents of the folder group to the Library Archive.</td>
<td>Library administrator or system administrators only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export</td>
<td>Exports all documents in the folders contained in the folder group.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher or higher access and that are the folder owner.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To create a folder**

1. In the Library, right-click a drawer or folder group and select **Add Folder**.
2. Enter a **Name** for the folder.
3. Select a **folder owner** for the list. Your permissions may be restricted to only allowing yourself to be the owner of the folder.
4. Select a **Default Schema** from the list. The list of schemas will be only those that you have access to.
5. Select a **Folder Group** from the list (if applicable).
6. Select a **Weight** for the folder. The lower the weight (such as -10), the higher the folder name appears in the Library. The higher the weight (such as 10), the lower the folder name appears in the list. Leave the weight at 0 if you want the folder groups sorted alphabetically.
7. Select a **Color** from the list. Options include: yellow (default), green, red, and blue. The folder is displayed in the library tree in the selected colour.

8. Click **Next**.

9. In the Security tab, do the following:
   - In the Group By field, select how you want the available FileHold Groups displayed.
   - In the Available FileHold Groups area, select the groups you want to be able to access the cabinet and click **Add Groups**. The group is added to the Current Members of Cabinet list.
   - In the Eligible Users in the FileHold Group, select the user you want to be able to access the cabinet and click **Add User**. The user is added to the Current Members of Cabinet list.
   - To remove a user or group from the cabinet, select the name from the Current Members of Cabinet list and click **Remove Members**.
   - To view all Groups and Users, click **Group Members**. A new All Groups/Users panel opens on the right side of the window.
   - To see which user roles the user or group belongs to, select the user or group name in the Current Members list and click **Effective Permissions**. The user role for that cabinet member will appear in the Effective Permissions list.
   - To set advanced security options on a user or group, select the user or group name in the Current Members list and click **Advanced Security Options**. To modify the rights, select a user role from the list and click **Apply**. To revert to the default user role, click **Restore**. Note that if a group or user’s permissions are modified, a red dot appears on the folder that has been modified when the user logs in.
   - Select the **Inherit Security Permissions from Cabinet** check box if you want to inherit the security settings from the cabinet that the folder will reside. If you select this check box, you cannot modify the members of the folder.

10. Click **Next**.

11. In the Auto-tagging tab, you can set the documents that are added to the folder to be automatically tagged (metadata automatically added). See the section **Creating Auto-Tagged Folders** for more information.

12. Click **Save**. The folder is added to the Library structure.

---

**To edit the folder properties**

1. Right-click on a folder in the Library and select **Properties**. The folder properties window opens.
2. Make any changes to the folder properties and click Save.

**TO DELETE A FOLDER**

1. Right-click on a folder in the Library and select Delete Folder.
   
   **NOTE:** You need to have delete permissions in order to delete a folder.

2. You will receive a warning message. Click OK to delete the folder. The folder is removed from the Library.

**WARNING**

Copying large folders and its contents will cause the FileHold server to consume resources and may slow down the system. We recommend that you do this after business hours if copying folders containing tens of thousands or many hundreds of thousands of documents. The amount of time it will take to copy a folder and its contents is dependent on the server hardware that powers the system; the faster the server hardware the better.

**TO COPY A FOLDER**

1. To copy a folder, its security, and all of its contents including documents, right-click on the cabinet and select Copy Folder.

2. Enter a name for the copied folder and click OK. The copied folder appears in the Library hierarchy.

**WARNING:** Cloning a folder does NOT copy the documents. Use Copy Folder to copy folders and documents.

**TO CLONE THE FOLDER STRUCTURE**

1. To clone a folder, its security, and all of its contents including drawers, folders and folder groups, right-click on the cabinet and select Clone Folder.

2. Select a destination in the Library for the cloned folder.

3. Enter a name for the cloned folder and click OK. The cloned folder appears in the Library hierarchy.

   **NOTE:** Cloning a folder does NOT copy the documents. Use Copy Folder to copy folders and documents.

**TO ARCHIVE A FOLDER**

1. To send a folder and its contents to the Library Archive, right-click on the folder name and select Archive Folder.

2. At the message prompt, click OK. The folder and its contents are moved to the archive.
TO MOVE A FOLDER
1. Right-click on a folder and select Move Folder.
2. Select the destination location by navigating through the Library in the dialog box and click OK. The folder is moved to the location.

TO SET THE DEFAULT VIEW FOR THE FOLDER
Administrators can create public views in the View preferences area and then assign the default view to each folder. Users can create personal views and assign it to a folder.
1. Right-click on the folder and select Set Default View.
2. Clear the Inherit setting from parent container check box.
3. Select the view you want to use from the drop down list.
4. Click OK to save your settings.

10.4.1. Viewing the Folder Statistics
You are able to see how many documents, number of files and size of the repository that are contained within a folder by looking at the statistics.

TO VIEW THE FOLDER STATISTICS
1. Right-click on a folder in the tree structure and select Properties.
2. In the folder properties window, files (latest version), size (in MB), files (all versions) and size of all versions (in MB) is shown. Click Cancel to close the folder properties.

10.4.2. Creating Auto-Tagged Folders
When documents are added to the system, you need to set the document with metadata in order to store it in the Library. Auto-tagging removes the manual step of setting the metadata step out of the process. The metadata values to be automatically applied to all files placed in the folder with auto-tagging configured. Auto-tagging on a folder is set on a document schema; therefore, all files using that schema will use the predefined auto-tags.

Auto-tagging can be set at the cabinet or folder level. If some of the documents in the cabinet or folder belong to a different schema type than what has been defined in the auto-tagging tab, then the metadata will not be changed or overwritten.

When documents are added to a folder that is auto-tagged, they must follow the rule that is defined and no changes can be made to that rule. For example, if the auto-tagging rule is set to the Invoices schema, then no other document schema types can be added to that folder.

Auto-tagging rules are set up by the folder owner or higher roles.
TO SET AUTO-TAGGING ON FOLDERS (OR CABINETS)

1. When creating a new folder go to the Auto-Tagging tab or for an existing folder, go to Folder Name > Properties > Auto-Tagging.

2. In the Auto-Tagging tab, select the Enable Auto-tagging check box to have all documents in this folder automatically “tagged” with the same metadata based on the schema as they are added to this cabinet. This assumes that all of the documents that are being added to the cabinet have mostly the same metadata as all the other documents in the cabinet. This ensures a highly compliant filing system and standardization across all documents within the cabinet or folder. Users can select to have some standard repetitive metadata added automatically, manually, or a combination of both.

3. Select the Make this the default auto-tagging settings for all folders in this cabinet if desired if you are setting up auto-tagging at the cabinet level. This option is not available at the folder level.

4. In the Auto-Tagging Metadata area, select the document schema and the metadata. You do not have to set all the metadata fields; you can leave them blank for the user to enter them.

5. Click Save.

6. The folder with the auto-tagging rule has the letter “A” on the folder signifying that is being automatically tagged.
11. DOCUMENT ACTIONS AND FUNCTIONS

A variety of actions can be taken on individual document versions. Actions are accessible from the contextual menu associated with a document by right-clicking on the document name.

The following actions can be performed on one or more documents at a time. The availability of actions is dependent on the rights that the user has.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action /Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Permissions needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open (FDA only)</td>
<td>Opens the selected document in its native application.</td>
<td>All users with access to the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open in Brava viewer (FDA only)</td>
<td>Opens files in the Brava document viewer. This option is only available if the Brava viewer is installed and licensed for the user.</td>
<td>Users that have been assigned a Brava viewer license. Starting in 2017, Brava viewer licenses are no longer available for new FileHold purchases. Previously purchased Brava viewer licenses are still available for use in the FileHold Desktop Application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open in PDF/Image viewer (FDA only)</td>
<td>Opens the document in the PDF/Image Viewer.</td>
<td>All users who have been assigned a FileHold level 1 or level 2 viewer license.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open in FileHold viewer (both FDA and Web Client)</td>
<td>Opens the document in the FileHold Viewer.</td>
<td>All users who have been assigned a FileHold level 1 or level 2 viewer license.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make a Local Copy (FDA) Get a Copy (Web Client)</td>
<td>Creates a copy of the document to the user’s local machine. The copy is automatically sent to the My FileHold Documents folder.</td>
<td>All users with access to a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Out This Document (FDA) Check Out (Web Client)</td>
<td>Checks out the document and downloads it to your working directory which is typically My FileHold Documents folder.</td>
<td>Users with document publisher rights or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check In This Document (FDA) Check In (Web Client)</td>
<td>Checks documents back in the system and opens the ‘lock” on the document. Documents that are checked in are given a new document version number.</td>
<td>Users with document publisher rights or higher. However, only the user that has checked the document out of library OR the library system administrator may check it back in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action /Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Permissions needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Workflow > Initiate workflow template name (FDA) | Allows you to select the workflow template name from the list and start a workflow. Selecting more than one document will start a multiple document workflow. | Users with Document Publisher rights or higher and is owner of the document.*  
*Unless the ‘Allow non document version owner to initialize workflow” permission setting is enabled. |
<p>| Workflow &gt; View Sign-Off Sheet | Listing of all users that either approved or rejected this version of the document, when they did it and if they signed-off on behalf of someone else. | Users that are participants or observers in a workflow. |
| Workflow &gt; View Review &amp; Approval History | View the history of comments for a workflow. | Users that are participants or observers in a workflow. |
| Workflow &gt; Cancel Workflow | Cancels a workflow in progress. | Initiators of a workflow or library administrators or higher. |
| Workflow &gt; Submit Approval | Allows you to approve a document. | Users assigned to perform an approval task in a workflow. |
| Workflow &gt; Submit Review | Allows you to submit a review on a document. | Users assigned to perform a review task in a workflow. |
| Courier &gt; View transmission status | Displays the Courier transmission report for the document. | Senders of the transmission and cabinet administrators or higher role and are owners of the cabinet. |
| Courier &gt; Initiate &lt;Courier template name&gt; | Select the Courier template name from the list and start a Courier transmission. | Anyone with a document publisher role or higher and has permission to use Courier. |
| Metadata and File Properties | Displays the Metadata and file properties for a file stored in the documents management software. | All users with access to the folder the document is in. |
| Edit Metadata | Displays the Metadata and file properties for the selected files and allows you to edit the metadata en masse. | Users with document publisher rights or higher. |
| Link Documents (FDA) Link (Web Client) | Displays the Create Links window to link the selected documents together. | Users with document publisher rights or higher. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action /Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Permissions needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View Linked Documents</td>
<td>Displays all documents that are linked to a selected document.</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder the document is in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redact Document (FDA only)</td>
<td>Sends a file to the Brava viewer so that the user may redact (black out) portions of the text before sharing for security reasons.</td>
<td>Users with a Brava viewer license who have the role of Document Publisher or greater. Starting in 2017, Brava viewer licenses are no longer available for new FileHold purchases. Previously purchased Brava viewer licenses are still available for use in the FileHold Desktop Application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Document Tray</td>
<td>Send a document to the Document Tray.</td>
<td>All users with read only or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Virtual Folder</td>
<td>Send a document to a Virtual Folder.</td>
<td>All users with read only roles or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Local Folder (FDA only)</td>
<td>Downloads a copy of document to a folder on your local computer. You can browse to where you want the document downloaded.</td>
<td>All users with read only roles or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Export (FDA only)</td>
<td>Exports the documents to your local computer in their native format and a XML file containing the metadata, schema, and library location for the selected documents.</td>
<td>All users with document publisher roles or higher unless restricted by administration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Email</td>
<td>Emails the document as an attachment or a link to the document in the document management system.</td>
<td>All users with read only roles or higher unless restricted by administration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Email and Check Out</td>
<td>Emails the document as an attachment or a link and checks out the document at the same time.</td>
<td>All users with document publisher roles or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Library Archive</td>
<td>Sends the document to the Library Archive.</td>
<td>All users with Library Administration or higher unless restricted by administration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Printer (FDA only)</td>
<td>Send the document to your printer. This function is available if enabled and user has a viewer license.</td>
<td>All users with document publisher roles or higher unless restricted by administration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action /Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Permissions needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to &gt; Existing Workflow (Web Client only)</td>
<td>Adds a main or supporting document to an existing workflow.</td>
<td>Users with Document Publisher role or higher. User must have access to all added documents and be owner of the document version when adding main documents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add to Existing Workflow (FDA and Web Client)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publish As</td>
<td>Allows users to convert documents in FileHold to PDF, TIFF, DWF or CSF.</td>
<td>All users with document publisher role or higher unless restricted by administration. Starting in 2017, Brava viewer licenses are no longer available for new FileHold purchases. Previously purchased Brava viewer licenses are still available for use in the FileHold Desktop Application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify Me</td>
<td>Create a Document Alert or Reminder and/or cancel ones that have been created.</td>
<td>All users with access to the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Shortcut</td>
<td>Allows the user to create a shortcut to a selected document in another Folder located in the document management system. Note that this functionality is disabled unless it is enabled by an administrator.</td>
<td>Users with Publisher access rights or higher that have access to the folder the document is in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to Document Location</td>
<td>Takes you to the folder location of the selected document. This function is available when you are not in a folder such as in My Favorites, search results, virtual folder and so on.</td>
<td>All users with access to the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy or Move</td>
<td>Make a copy of a document or move it to another location in FileHold.</td>
<td>Document Publisher and Publisher need to have ownership of the document. Organizers or higher permissions can move documents owned by anyone. Restrictions on where a document can be moved to will apply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action /Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Permissions needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Delete a document from the system.</td>
<td>All users with Document Publisher + delete permissions or higher (and in some cases, they can only delete their own documents. See User Roles for more information). Library administrators can recover deleted documents within the configured number of days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convert to Offline</td>
<td>Converts an electronic document to an offline document. Downloads the file to the local machine and deletes all versions of a file from the document management system.</td>
<td>Users with Cabinet Administrator rights or higher and are owners of the cabinet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rename</td>
<td>Rename a document.</td>
<td>Users that created the file or those with Document Publisher or higher permissions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Document Owner</td>
<td>Change the owner of a document version. Ownership change can be done one document at a time.</td>
<td>Users with Organizer role and higher. Cabinet Administrators must own the cabinet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Version History</td>
<td>Displays the usage logs for the selected document including:</td>
<td>All users with access to the folder the document is in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• All versions of the document.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Edits to the document.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Download as Zip File</td>
<td>Downloads multiple documents as one zip file. Note: This command only appears if multiple documents are selected first. The zip file name will include the user name and the download date.</td>
<td>Users with access to the folder the document is in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.1. ADDING DOCUMENTS TO FILEHOLD

Users with Document Publisher and higher permissions can add files to the document management system. Documents can be brought into FileHold using several methods:

- **Drag and drop** — Drag and drop a document from your local computer.
• Directly within FileHold — In the FDA or Web Client.
• Microsoft Office applications — Use the integrated FileHold toolbar to add documents.
• Microsoft Outlook — Add emails using the integrated FileHold toolbar or the “watched folder”.
• Watched Folders — Documents can be brought into the system automatically from a scanner location. See Watched Folders for more information.
• Manage Imports — Documents can be brought into the system automatically using the Manage Imports tool. See the Library Administration Guide for more information.
• WebCap — Web-based scanning through the Web Client.
• For other ways to get documents into FileHold, see the Knowledge Base.

11.2. DRAGGING AND DROPPING DOCUMENTS

You can use Windows Explorer to drag and drop one or many documents into a folder or the Inbox of the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA). If dragging and dropping multiple documents, they will be automatically sent to the Inbox for processing. If dragging to a folder location, the destination folder will be automatically set.

You cannot drag and drop documents into the FileHold Web Client.

TO DRAG AND DROP DOCUMENTS

1. In Windows Explorer, select the files to be transferred to FileHold from the local computer.
2. Drag and drop them to their destination folder or to the Inbox.
3. For files dragged to a folder destination, enter the metadata (unless the folder is auto-tagged) and click Add. The document is added to the location.
4. For files dragged to the Inbox, enter the metadata and select a destination.
   - Click **Set Metadata** and **Set Destination** to enter the metadata and select the destination folder.
   - Click **Send** or **Send All** to send the document(s) to the folder.
   - See [Entering Metadata for a Document](#) for more information on setting metadata on documents.

11.3. ADDING DOCUMENTS DIRECTLY FROM THE FILEHOLD DESKTOP APPLICATION

There are many ways in which you can add one or documents directly from the FileHold Desktop Application:
   - Click the **Add File** (+) button from the Inbox or folder location.
   - Go to **File > Add File to Library**. This option allows you to add one or many documents.
   - Go to **File > Add Folder to Library**. Adds the entire contents of a folder (not the folder itself) to the Inbox.
   
   If you are adding more than one document at a time, then the documents will automatically go to the Inbox for processing.
TO ADD FILES DIRECTLY FROM THE FILEHOLD DESKTOP APPLICATION

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the Inbox or a folder location, click Add File (+ sign).
   - Go to File > Add File to Library.
   - Go to File > Add Folder to Library.

2. Select the file from the local computer and click OK.

3. If the file was added to the Inbox, the metadata and destination will need to be set. Click Set Metadata and Set Destination to enter the information. After the information is entered, click Send or Send All. See Entering Metadata for a Document for more information on setting metadata on documents.

4. If the file was added to a folder, enter the metadata and click Add.

11.4. ADDING DOCUMENTS THROUGH THE FILEHOLD WEB CLIENT

When adding documents via the web client, you can only add a single document at a time. If you need to add multiple documents, use the FileHold Desktop Application. Since there is no Inbox in the Web Client, you add a document from within the destination folder or use the Add Document Wizard.

TO ADD A DOCUMENT VIA THE WEB CLIENT

1. In the destination folder, click Add File to Folder.

2. When the Metadata pane opens, select the Document Schema from the list.

3. Select the format of the document, if applicable.

4. Click Browse to locate the file that you want to add to the repository.

5. Fill out the required metadata fields. See Entering Metadata for a Document for more information on setting metadata on documents.

6. Click Save.

TO ADD A DOCUMENT USING THE ADD DOCUMENT WIZARD

1. In the Web Client, select Add Document from the library tree.
2. In the Select a File page, click **Browse** to locate the file to add to the repository.

3. Click **Next**.

4. In the Select a Folder page, select a destination folder from the library tree or select the **Auto-file** check box to automatically set the destination. Note that auto-filing must be configured by your administrator in order to use it. If you try to use auto-filing and it has not been configured, you will receive a message stating "The selected document schema doesn't have an associated auto-filing script."

5. Click **Next**.

6. In the Metadata page, select the schema and enter the metadata field values.

7. Click **Submit**.

### 11.5. ADDING DOCUMENTS FROM MICROSOFT OUTLOOK

Users can save entire emails, including attachments or save just the attachment without the email. Emails can be brought into the system:

- Drag and drop emails from Microsoft Outlook into the FileHold document management system.
- Use the **Add to FileHold** button from the Add Ins toolbar in Microsoft Outlook. The email message has to be opened in order to use the Add to FileHold button as you cannot do it from the messages view.
- Using a Microsoft Outlook ‘watched folder’ allows you to add any emails into the “watched folder” in Outlook so that the emails are brought into a folder on the local computer or network location. Then having a **watched folder** or managed import set up in the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA) (see the *Library Administrator Guide* for more information on managed imports), the emails automatically get brought into system for processing.

Emails are saved as msg files and open in Outlook with their attachments. The email header information (To, From, CC, Date, Subject and Attachment) may be automatically extracted into the metadata fields, depending on what your administrator has configured. That way, you do not have to type this information in; instead the system will do it for you. See **Extraction Rules** in the *Library Administration Guide* for more information.

For the watched folder in Outlook, you can set up special email rules in Outlook to ensure the correct emails are being moved into the document management system. You can also drag and drop emails into the watched folder. Once an email has been sent into the document management system, it can never be imported again.

### TO ADD EMAILS FROM MICROSOFT OUTLOOK

1. Do one of the following:
   - From Microsoft Outlook, select one or more emails and drag and drop the files into either the Inbox or a folder location. Enter any required metadata and/or destination information. See **Entering Metadata for a Document** for more information on setting metadata on documents.
   - From Microsoft Outlook, open an email and go to the **Add-Ins** tab and click **Add to FileHold** (+ sign). Select the folder location and enter the metadata and click **Add**. See **Entering Metadata for a Document** for more information on setting metadata on documents.
   - Drag and drop or set up an Outlook rule to send documents to the Outlook watched folder. See below for more information.
**Dragging and Dropping Emails From Outlook**

Drag and drop allows a user to move multiple emails from Outlook to the document management system FDA.

1. Select the email(s) that are to be moved to the document management system.
2. Drag and Drop to the FDA.
3. Emails will automatically be sent to the Inbox for processing.

**Remember:** Emails saved to the system can only be accessed by those with appropriate permissions to access the folder in the document management system where the email is saved.

**To set up the Microsoft Outlook Watched Folder**

1. Create a folder in Microsoft Outlook that you want add the emails to.
2. On your local computer or network location, create a folder that you want FileHold to “watch” for new emails to be brought into the repository.
3. In the FileHold Desktop Application, do one of the following:
   - Set up the Watched Folder for the folder you just created on your local computer or network drive. See Watched Folders for more information. Note that if you are using a Watched Folder, the email header information is not extracted into the metadata fields of the schema. If you want the email header information extracted into the metadata fields, use a managed import instead.
   - Have your library administrator set up a Managed Import for the folder that was created on your local computer or network. If using a managed import to bring emails into FileHold, ensure that the import format has been set to “Quick Scan Pro” in the user preferences. If the import format has been set to “Both” in the user preferences, ensure that the import format is set to “QuickScan Pro” on the individual managed import. See the End User Guide for more information on the User Preferences setting or the Library Administration Guide for more information on Managed Imports.

**NOTE:** If you are using the “Both” option in the user preferences, ensure that folder you select for the import profile contains only one type of XML files. The rule also applied for any of its subfolders. The XML files for the import formats cannot coexist in the same folder tree.

4. In Outlook 2010, select the Add Ins tab in Outlook and click FileHold Watched Folder.
   - In Outlook 2007, click FileHold Watched Folder in the toolbar.
5. In the FileHold Watched Folder Configuration window, click the **Enable Outlook Watched Folder** check box.

6. In the Watched Folder in Outlook field, click **Browse** to select the watched folder you created in Microsoft Outlook.

7. In the Destination Folder for Export field, click **Browse** to select the watched folder on your local computer or network drive.

8. To create an XML file when the emails are exported, select the **Export XML files in Document Import compatible format** check box. This XML file is created for each .msg file and can be using in conjunction with the Manage Imports tool to import emails into the repository. The XML file contains the following message header information: To, From, CC, Date, Subject, and Attachments. Note that this **does not** need to be turned on to work with FileHold Watched Folders. The XML files do not get imported into the repository.

9. Click **OK**.

10. Test your configuration by adding an .msg file to your Outlook watched folder. Then go into FileHold to ensure that the file has been brought into the Inbox for processing or sent to the folder, depending on your configuration settings in the Watched Folder or Managed Import.

    If you are setting up a managed import for emails, ensure that you have an email schema and an email extraction rule configured.

**To add only an attachment from an email**

If attachments are saved to the system without the email they are stored in their native format.

**NOTE:** You cannot drag and drop an email attachment. You will need to use the Send to FileHold command.

1. In Microsoft Outlook, select and open an email with an attachment.
2. Right-click on the attachment and select **Add to FileHold**.
3. Select a destination for the document.
4. Enter the metadata for the document. See [Entering Metadata for a Document](#) for more information on setting metadata on documents.
5. Select the following options, if applicable:
   - Close the document before I add it — Closes the document in the application you are working in after you have added the file.
- Delete the local copy of this file after it has been successfully added — Deletes the copy of the file from your local computer after it is added.
- Email notify all folder members that this document has been added to this folder — Sends an email alert to all the members of the selected folder.

6. Click **Add** or **Auto-File** if the document was added to a folder that is **auto-tagged**.

### 11.6. ADDING DOCUMENT FROM MICROSOFT OFFICE APPLICATIONS

FileHold has integration with Microsoft Office applications such as Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Visio, and OneNote (2010 only). The integrated toolbar can be found on the Add Ins tab of the Office applications.

The FileHold Office Client (FOC) window is used when adding, browsing, checking in, adding attachments or approving documents in FileHold from within Microsoft Office applications.

**TO ADD FILES FROM MICROSOFT OFFICE APPLICATIONS (EXCLUDING MICROSOFT OUTLOOK)**

1. Create or open a document in a Microsoft Office application such as Microsoft Word.
2. Save the document to your local computer.
3. In Microsoft Office 2007 or higher, select the **Add-In** tab and click **Add to FileHold** (+ sign) or **Send to FileHold > Add Document**.
   - In Microsoft Office 2010 or 2013, select the FileHold tab and click **Add to FileHold** (+ sign).
   - In Microsoft Office 2007 or higher, select the Add-In tab and click **Add to FileHold** (+ sign) or **Send to FileHold > Add Document**.
4. The FileHold Microsoft Office Client window opens.
5. Select a destination folder and enter the metadata.
6. Select the following options, if applicable:
   - Close the document before I add it — Closes the document in the application you are working in after you have added the file.
   - Delete the local copy of this file after it has been successfully added — Deletes the copy of the file from your local computer after it is added.
   - Email notify all folder members that this document has been added to this folder — Sends an email alert to all the members of the selected folder.
7. Click **Add** or **Auto-File** if you selected a folder that has been **auto-tagged**.

### 11.7. ADDING OFFLINE DOCUMENTS

An offline document is something that cannot be stored in the document management system such as a map, book, or blueprints. An offline document can also point to documents that are not yet in electronic form such as a location of a folder in a filing cabinet in a historical records room. You will need to create an offline document schema in order to add offline documents that have a metadata field that states where the offline document is stored. The schema simply points to where the document is physically stored.

Offline documents are tracked in the system so you can see who has the document out or in other words, who has taken the item from its physical location.

Offline documents can be:
- Checked out
- Converted to an electronic document
- Undergo a workflow
- View the version history

**TO ADD OFFLINE DOCUMENTS**

1. Do one of the following:
   - From a folder location or the Inbox in the FDA, go to File > Add Offline Document.
   - In the Web Client, select a folder and click Add File to Folder or use the Add Document Wizard.
2. Select the Offline Document Schema name. See the Library Administration Guide on how to create an offline document schema.
3. Fill out the required metadata fields and click Add.
4. Set a destination folder if adding the Offline document from the Inbox.

**11.8. EXPORTING DOCUMENTS IN A VIEW TO A CSV FILE**

From any folder view, search results or other FileHold view, you can export the columns and associated values to a CSV file. The CSV file contains information from the entire folder list columns except for the icons associated with the documents (i.e. favorites and permissions).

You can customize the view in order to export the data that you want by adding or removing columns, grouping, sorting, and so on, using the View Preferences. You can also perform an Advanced Search to achieve the data results you want to export.

**NOTE:** In the FDA, only the documents displayed on the current “page” will be exported to the CSV file. If you have additional pages of documents, you will need to export each page to CSV. You can also increase the number of documents displayed on a “page” in the View Preferences.

**TO EXPORT FOLDER CONTENTS TO A CSV FILE**

1. Open a folder or do a search to create a list of files to export.
2. Right-click in the column names header and select Export Grids to CSV.
3. Enter a name for the CSV file and select a location to save the document.
4. Click Save.
5. You can now open the document in a spreadsheet.
11.9. ENTERING METADATA FOR A DOCUMENT

The metadata pane displays the document schema and its associated metadata as well as system values in the version properties area. The metadata and version properties are unique for each version of every document in the system. All of these values are can be searched on in the system.

When documents are being added to the document management system, it requires two pieces of information prior the file being added to the library:

1. Values for all required metadata fields.
2. A destination folder.

The status of the document is “Info Required” until the information is entered. Once the required metadata is filled and a destination set, the status changes to “Ready to Send” and document(s) can be sent to the library.

When entering metadata for document, all fields marked with an asterisk * indicate that the field is mandatory and must be filled in. The type of metadata collected for a document schema is determined by how you set up your metadata schema. Metadata is set in the Metadata Pane.

TO OPEN THE METADATA PANE

1. In a folder or search results view, do one of the following:
   - In the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA), click .
   - In the Web Client or FDA, right-click and select Metadata & File Properties.
   - Use the shortcut key Ctrl+Shift+P .

2. In the Inbox of the FDA, click Set Metadata or Edit Metadata or press the shortcut key Ctrl+Shift+P.

Once the metadata has been set, it is displayed in the Metadata Pane along with the file version properties associated with the selected file. The version properties are displayed below the metadata properties. Here, the document owner, version number, status, format, URL links, file type, library location, markup status, and file size can be viewed. All of the version properties of a file are searchable.
See the table below for details on the document version properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Version</strong></td>
<td>Displays the number of versions for a document. Click the View All Versions link to see all document versions. See <a href="#">Version History</a> for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Owner</strong></td>
<td>The user that initially added the file or the user that added the latest version of the file. Ownership is important when it comes to user roles and being able to delete, move, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Library Status</strong></td>
<td>States if the document is checked in or checked out. If it is checked out it will state who has checked out the document and when it was checked out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Has Markups</strong></td>
<td>If any markups have been added via the Brava viewer, it states Yes. If there is no markups, it states No. Starting in 2017, Brava viewer licenses are no longer available for new FileHold purchases. Previously purchased Brava viewer licenses are still available for use in the FileHold Desktop Application.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Version Property | Description
--- | ---
FileHold ID | A unique ID number given to every document in the system. Documents are numbered sequentially as they are added. The number after the period (.) indicates the version number.
Format | Electronic Document – documents that can be checked out/in and modified.
Electronic Record – records cannot be modified. There will only be one version of this file.
Offline Document – physical items that reside in your office or point to documents that are not yet in electronic format in the document management system.
Library Location | The cabinet / drawer / folder group (optional) / folder location of the document.
Document URL | Links that can be used to point to the document. There may be different link types available depending upon what your library administrator has configured. To copy the link, click the link and paste the link into another document.
Copy Default URL – link to where the document resides using the default URL configured by the administrator.
For example, http://fileholdserver/FH/FileHold/WebClient/LibraryForm.aspx?docId=1 or fda://document/1
All URLS – Displays the list of URLs that are available for use. The list is configured by an administrator. If this option is not available, then only the Default URL can be copied.
See your library administrator for details.
Type of File | States the file type such as Microsoft Word, PDF, TXT, JPG, etc.
Size | States the size of the file.

#### 11.9.1. Entering Metadata for a Single or Multiple Documents

Before a document can be added to the library, it requires two pieces of information:

- Values for all required metadata fields - When entering metadata (also called tagging or indexing) for document, all fields marked with a * indicate that the field is mandatory and must be filled in. Metadata is set in the Metadata Pane.

- A destination folder - The folder in the library structure where the document will reside.

**IMPORTANT:** The maximum number of characters in a document name is 100. This limit is in place to reduce the risk of conflicts with filename and path length limits in Microsoft Windows. The maximum size of the filename and path in Windows is 260 characters. This means that the longest path that will avoid conflict with Windows's limit when making a local copy of a document from the document management system is 160 characters. The user will see an error message if the limit is exceeded.

**TIP:** There may be cases where you would like the name of the document to be longer than 100 characters. You can create a metadata text field large enough to hold the large name and
use custom naming to set the document name that would be used if the document is copied outside of the document management system. The L mask operator can be used to truncate the name to a length less than the maximum and an extra identifier like the document id or the document create date and time could be added to simplify identifying the document outside of the document management system.

**TO ENTER METADATA FOR A SINGLE DOCUMENT**
1. Add the file to the document management system. This can be done in the Inbox or a folder location.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Click the inline Set Metadata link.
   - Click the Edit Metadata button.
   - Right-click and select Edit Metadata.
   - Click the metadata pane button.
3. Select the Document Schema from the list. The metadata fields will change depending on which schema you have chosen.
4. Enter in all the required metadata information. This is marked with an asterisk (*).
5. Fill in the optional information if needed.
6. Select the check box to delete the local copy of the file after it is added to the Library if required.
7. Select the check box to email all folder members that a document has been added to the folder if required.
8. Click Add or Save & Next to add metadata to the next document in the list.

**TO ENTER METADATA FOR MULTIPLE DOCUMENTS AT A TIME (FDA ONLY)**
1. Add the files to the FileHold Desktop Application. By default, these documents will go to the Inbox.
2. Select the files to be tagged (indexed). Use the CTRL or SHIFT keys to select multiple documents.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click the Edit Metadata button.
   - Right-click and select Edit Metadata.

**NOTE:** Do not click the inline Edit Metadata link. This will cause you to edit the metadata for just that selected document.
4. Select the Document Schema from the list. The metadata fields will change depending on which schema you have chosen.
5. Do one of the following:
   - To enter common values for all metadata fields for all of the selected files, select the Check All check box and enter the metadata values.
To enter common values for only select metadata fields, select the check box next to the metadata field names.

6. Select the check box to delete the local copy of the file after it is added to the Library if required.

7. Select the check box to email all folder members that a document has been added to the folder if required.

8. Click **Save**.
9. If there are any required metadata fields that were not filled out, enter in all the required values for the individual documents. Required fields are marked with an asterisk *.

10. Fill in the optional metadata fields if needed.

11. Click **Save** or **Save & Next**.

### 11.9.2. Entering Metadata Using Click to Tag

Click to Tag is a method of quickly assigning metadata to a document being added to the repository using the FileHold Desktop Application. It allows you to “click” or “rubber band” text, numbers, dates, etc. on the screen and inserts the value into the metadata field of the schema. When using Click to Tag, the mechanism OCR’s (optical character recognition) the selected area on the screen. This makes it possible to extract values not just from the document but also from any external application accessible on the user’s computer.

In order to use Click to Tag, it must be enabled in the **User Preferences**. Note that this setting may be overwritten by your administrator.

When Click to Tag is invoked in the metadata pane, the user is prompted to open the document in the FileHold viewer, the document’s native application, or to not open the document. Not opening the document allows you to tag the document using an alternative file or from another application.

Once an option to tag the document is selected, the screen is covered with an opaque white mask called the “fold”. This indicates that the Click to Tag process is in effect. A tool tip displaying the metadata field name to tag is shown. You can then click or rubber band the value for the metadata field. After the first metadata field is tagged and validated, the next metadata field in the list can be captured. The process is repeated until all the values have been captured. The “fold” can be activated and deactivated at any time during the tagging process in the event that a document needs to be scrolled to other page, zoomed, or tagged from a different screen.

When tagging metadata fields, read-only and auto-tagged fields are skipped from the tagging process. Check box type metadata fields are also skipped. For drop-down or drill down type metadata fields, the information that is being selected on the screen must be an exact match. If no matching value is found, an error message is displayed. Similarly, date type fields will need to be properly formatted on the screen or an error message is displayed. If date, currency, number, or drop down list values do not match what has been captured or is not formatted correctly, the system will prompt you to enter a correct value.

If no metadata fields are present in the selected schema, the Click to Tag button is not available.

Note that the quality of the documents that are being tagged using Click to Tag need to be reasonably high. For this reason, **only documents that are electronic in origin** should be used with Click to Tag. Prior to using Click to Tag, you should test the tagging process with your various electronic documents to ensure that it will work well.

Font/text size needs to be of a reasonable size as Click to Tag does not work well with small fonts. If Click to Tag is not working well with the current font size, zoom into the document to increase the size of the font on the screen. Due to various quality, font size, or font type
reasons, some text may not be able to be read (ORC’d) from the screen and cannot be tagged using Click to Tag. In these cases, metadata values have to be entered manually.

Scanned documents may present issues in tagging due to poor quality scans so for this reason, the OCR capabilities of your scanning software should be used to tag the documents and not Click To Tag. See the Knowledge Base for more information on scanning documents and importing metadata into the document management system.

Click to Tag supports only the English language “out of the box”. This can be modified in the FDA.exe.config setting `<add key="ClickToTagLanguage" value="eng"/>`. For other language support, contact FileHold Professional Services at sales@filehold.com.

**TO ENTER METADATA USING CLICK TO TAG**

1. Add a new document(s) or select an existing document(s).
2. Select a Document Schema from the list if adding a new document.
3. In the metadata pane, click Click to Tag.

4. In the Click to Tag window, select one of the following options:
   - Open the document in the native application – The document opens in its native application. For example, if it is a PDF then it opens in Adobe Reader.
   - Open the document in the Brava viewer – The document opens in the Brava viewer in the FileHold Desktop Application. You may need to undock the viewer, adjust the size, or move it to another monitor in order to tag the document. You can do this by closing the “fold”. Starting in 2017, Brava viewer licenses are no longer available for new FileHold purchases. Previously purchased Brava viewer licenses are still available for use in the FileHold Desktop Application.
   - Open in the document in the PDF/Image viewer – Opens the document in the PDF/Image viewer in the FDA. You may need to undock the viewer, adjust the size, or move it to another monitor in order to tag the document. You can do this by closing the “fold”.
   - Do not open the document – Does not open the document in any viewer or application. Use this open to tag the document from an alternative file or from another application.
NOTE: If you are tagging multiple documents at once, then this window does not appear. You will need to close the fold and open the document or application that you want to tag from and then open the fold again to proceed with tagging.

5. Once an option is selected, the “fold”, a white opaque mask, appears over the screen. This indicates the Click to Tag process is in effect. You may need to deactivate and activate the fold to undock the viewer, adjust the size, scroll through a document, zoomed, or move it to another monitor, and so on in order to tag the document. To deactivate the fold, click Fold in the bottom right corner. To activate the fold, click the Unfold button. See the example screen shots below:

- To deactivate or close the fold, you can also right-click on the activated fold and select Fold.
- To move between windows, use Alt+Tab or the task bar instead of deactivating the fold.

6. Once the document is opened in the selected viewer and the fold is activated, the first metadata field in the schema displays in a tool tip. Capture the value for the metadata field by:

- A single word is captured by clicking on it.
- Multiple words or lines are captured by dragging a rectangle round the words (rubber banding) All words located inside or intersecting the triangle are captured. See the example below:
7. Continue tagging the rest of the metadata fields in the schema using the click or rubber band methods. A tool tip displays each metadata field name.

8. If you need to change a value or skip to another metadata field, right-click on the fold while it is activated. The list of metadata fields for the selected schema is shown. Select the desired metadata field name from the list. The metadata field that is currently being tagged has a check mark next to its name.

9. If the value of the metadata field is not valid (does not match drop-down or drill down list value, invalid date format or check box) or cannot be read due to reasons (such as poor quality, font size, font type, and so on) an error message is shown stating the value is not
valid. Click **OK** to retry tagging the value. When tagging a currency, number, drop down list, or date value and Click to Tag does not recognize the value, a window opens prompting the user to enter the correct value.

![Click To Tag Correction](image)

10. Once the tagging is completed, right click on the activated fold and select **Close**.
   - Alternatively, click **ESC** to end the Click to Tag process.
11. Click **Save** in the metadata pane to save the information.

### 11.9.3. Entering Metadata Using Database Lookups

Metadata information can be automatically populated into many metadata fields based on a single metadata “look up” value that comes from a database such as an accounting database or an ERP system.

If the administrator has configured the schema to use database lookups, you will see a Lookup button in the Metadata pane. Clicking this button after entering or selecting the value from the configured database drop down list metadata field retrieves any mapped values from the database into the remaining metadata field values of the schema. This can reduce the amount of time it takes to index a document with metadata.

When the list retrieved from the database is presented to the user in the drop down list, only the first 100 items will be displayed in the FDA and the first 25 items in the Web Client. As the user scrolls through the list or starting typing the value, more values will be loaded into the view but is limited to viewing 100 (FDA) or 25 (Web Client) values at a time.

If there are any blank required fields after the lookup is performed, you will need to enter those manually. The values of any read-only or automatically tagged fields are not affected by the database lookup.

The **Lookup** button in the metadata pane is shown when adding a single document or when editing the metadata of a single document. You cannot do database lookups for several documents at once from the Inbox; look ups have to be done one document at a time.
TO ENTER METADATA USING DATABASE LOOKUPS

1. Do one of the following:
   - Add a single document to the document management system.
   - Select a single document in the Inbox.
   - Edit the metadata of a document in the library.


3. Enter or select the value for the database drop down list metadata field that is configured to do the lookups.
   - If you enter a value in the wrong metadata field, you will receive an error message “Missing value for <metadata field name>”.

4. Click Lookup. All of the metadata fields that are configured will pull in the values from the database.

5. Enter values in any other required metadata fields or modify any of the values that were retrieved.

6. Click Add or Save.

11.9.4. Editing Metadata

If you have sufficient permissions (Document Publisher or higher role), you are able to edit the metadata for a document.

For more information on creating database drop down list metadata fields or setting the database lookup on a schema, see the Library Administration Guide.
TO EDIT METADATA
1. Locate the document whose metadata you want to edit and open the metadata pane.
2. Click Edit and make any changes to the existing values.
3. Click Save.

11.9.5. Copying Metadata

You can copy metadata values when the metadata panel is in its editable or non-editable form.

TO COPY METADATA
1. Select a document and open the metadata pane.
2. Right-click and select Copy.

11.9.6. Using the Document URLs

You can use the URLs provided in the Version Properties area of the metadata pane to send links to other FileHold users instead of sending the entire document.

Depending on how your library administrator has configured it, you may be able to copy only the default URL or all configured URLs.

Click the link to copy the URL. The link is copied and you can paste the link using Ctrl+V.

TO LINK FDA AND WEB CLIENT URLS TO A WEB PAGE

You can link both Web Client URLs and FileHold Desktop Application (FDA) URLs to a web page; however, these links still use the security set on the document. The user attempting to open a URL must have the cabinet, folder, and schema permissions in order to access the document.

1. Open the metadata pane for the document’s link you want to copy.
2. Under Version Properties > Document URL, click Copy URL for the web client URL or click Copy FDA Link for the FileHold Desktop Application link.
   TIP: Due to browser security, in order to copy links in Mozilla FireFox or Google Chrome, you will need to right-click on the link and select Copy Link Location. You can then paste the link into an email or document.
3. You can paste these links into your web page using CTRL+V.
4. When the URL link is clicked from a web page, you will need log in to FileHold; either the web client or FileHold Desktop Application, depending on the link type. Both the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA) URL and the Web Client URL are maintained.
5. Once you are in FileHold, the document will appear highlighted in the folder list. You can get a local copy, check out, view version history, etc.

11.10. SETTING THE DESTINATION FOLDER

You will need to determine which folder the documents will reside in the library structure. You can set the destination for one or more documents at a time from the Inbox.

TIP: You can use the Recent Folders list if you are always adding documents to the same folder location.
TO SET THE DESTINATION FOLDER FOR DOCUMENTS

1. Do one of the following:
   - From the Inbox, select a single document and click Set Destination.
   - From the Inbox, select one or multiple documents to be filed under the same folder and click Edit Destination from the toolbar. If setting the destination for multiple documents, do not use the Set Destination link.
   - Alternatively, drag and drop one or many documents to the folder location in the library tree.

2. From the Select Location window, browse to the folder location in the library tree and click OK. The destination for the documents will be shown in the Inbox.

11.1. DELETING FILES

You may only delete files if you the correct permissions and are owner of the document. You can also delete previous versions of a document.

TO DELETE A FILE

1. Select the document name and click Delete X.

11.12. CHECKING IN AND CHECKING OUT DOCUMENTS

Document version control ensures that changes made to documents are not accidentally overwritten by other users. Checking out a document “locks” the document and prevents others from making changes. Users can still get a local copy of the document (read-only) when a document is checked out.

A unique copy of every version of a file checked into the system is retained to ensure that documents can be reverted back to a previous version if needed. To view all versions of a document, see the Version History.

It is important for users to remember to check documents in once they are finished editing. Users cannot view your changes or check the document out until the document is checked back in. To view all of the documents that you have checked out, go to My FileHold > Checked Out Documents.
When the file is checked out, its status is set to **Checked Out**. In the Version Properties area of the Metadata pane, you can see who checked out the document and the date and time it was checked out. When a document is checked in, its status is set to Checked In.

### TO CHECK OUT A DOCUMENT

1. Locate the document you want to check out in the Library and do one of the following:
   - Click **Check Out** from the toolbar.
   - Right-click and select **Check Out This Document**.
   - To check out and open the file in its native application, hold the **CTRL** key and double-click the document name.

2. The document status changes to Checked Out and is downloaded to your working folder. Your working folder is typically `C:\Users\username\Documents\My FileHold Documents`. The working folder location is set in your **User Preferences**.
   - If you selected to check out and open the file, it will open in its native application. For example, a `.doc` document will open in Microsoft Word.

11.12.1. **Checking in Documents**

Only the user that checked the document out of the records management system can check the document back in. You can check in a document from anywhere the document shows up in the system such as the folder location, My Checked out Documents, or a Microsoft Office application.

Documents can be deleted automatically upon check in if the setting “By default delete documents that I Check In to FileHold” is enabled in the **User Preferences**. It may also be locked down by an administrator and cannot be modified.

It is possible to enable the setting “Edit metadata upon Check In action” in the **User Preferences** so that the metadata pane opens for editing after checking in a document into the document management system. If configured to do so, then the metadata pane automatically opens upon check in so the values can be modified. This option can be locked down by a system administrator. See the **System Administrator Guide** for details.

Metadata field values may be cleared upon check-in if the option "Clear at Check In" has been enabled in the schema. If enabled, then any required metadata fields (marked with an asterisk *) in the schema are cleared forcing you to enter new values upon check in. See your library administrator for details.
TO CHECK IN FROM MY CHECKED OUT DOCUMENTS

1. Select document and do one of the following:
   - Click Check In from the toolbar
   - Right-click on the document name and select Check In This Document.
2. Click Browse to go the folder location where the document that you are checking in located, if needed. FileHold keeps track of where the document was downloaded to so if the document is still in the same location, the path is automatically entered.
3. Select any of the following options, if available/applicable:
   - Edit metadata for these document(s) before check-in – This option opens the metadata pane so the metadata field values can be edited. This option may be automatically selected if the option “Edit metadata upon Check In action” is enabled in the User Preferences. It may also be locked down by an administrator and cannot be modified.
   - Delete the local copy of this file after it has been successfully checked in – This option removes the local copy of the file from the user’s computer. This option may be automatically selected if the option “By default delete documents that I Check In to FileHold” is enabled in the User Preferences. It may also be locked down by an administrator and cannot be modified.
   - Email notify all folder members that these documents (or files) have been checked in – This option sends an email to all users and groups that have access to the folder. This option may not be available, depending on the Library Administration settings. See the Library Administration Guide for more information.
3. Click Check In.
4. If the options “Edit metadata upon Check In action” or “Clear at Check In” are enabled, fill out the required metadata values in the metadata pane and click Save.

TO CHECK IN DOCUMENTS FROM MICROSOFT OFFICE AND OUTLOOK

1. From a Microsoft Office application, select Send to FileHold > Check In Document or click the Check In icon from the FileHold toolbar.
   - In Office 2007 and 2010 these commands are located in the Add-Ins tab.

TO CHECK IN AN UNCHANGED DOCUMENTS (UNDO CHECKOUT)

1. After checking in a document, a window will prompt you to select the new version of the document. At the top of the box is the option ‘I have not changed these document(s). Please undo the check out of these files’. Select the check box to undo the checkout leaving the last version of the document as the most recent version.
   - If this option is not selected when the user clicks the Check-In button, the “new” file will upload to the documents management system as the latest version of the file.

TO CHECK IN MULTIPLE DOCUMENTS

1. From the My Checked Out Documents view, select the documents to check in and click Check In.
   - This option is not available through the Web Client.
2. Alternatively, use the Working Documents feature to check in multiple documents at once.
11.13. COPYING OR MOVING FILES

The Copy or Move function in FileHold allows you to make a copy of a document and/or move it to another location in the library.

In order to move or copy documents, Document Publishers and Publishers need to have ownership of the document. Users who are Organizers or higher permissions can move documents owned by anyone. Restrictions on where a document can be moved to will apply.

**TO COPY OR MOVE A FILE**

1. Select one or many documents.
2. Right-click and select Copy or Move.
3. In the Copy/Move window, select one of the following options:
   - Move files to a new location in the library
   - Copy files to a new location in the library
4. Click Next.
5. Select the destination in the library for the documents or folder and click OK. The documents are moved and/or copied to the new location.

11.14. MAKING A LOCAL COPY

You can make a copy (download) of a document to your local machine. The document is downloaded to the working folder location specified in your User Preferences. This is typically in the location C:\Users\username\Documents\My FileHold Documents.

**TO MAKE A LOCAL COPY OF A DOCUMENT**

1. Locate the document in the Library and do one of the following:
   - In the FDA, click Make a Local Copy from the toolbar.
   - In Web Client, select the check box next to the document name and click Get Copy.
   - In Web Client or FDA, right-click on the document and select Make a local copy.
2. The document is downloaded to your working folder location.

11.15. EMAILING, AND EMAILING AND CHECKING OUT DOCUMENTS

You are able to email and “email and check out” documents from the Library. When sending files from the document management system, it is important to send the file in a manner that allows the other user to access the information while keeping sensitive data safe.

When emailing a link or attachment, emails retain the properties of your Microsoft Outlook messages including signature blocks and other added items like legal disclaimers.

There are two ways to send files:
- Send as an attachment – Attachments are the most common way of sharing files via email; however, they are the least secure as anyone who receives the attachment can open the document.

- Send as a link – Links are not as common as attachments when sharing documents; however, they are the most secure. Those that do not permission in the document management system to access the file will be unable to open the document via the link. In other words, in order to access a file via a link, the recipient must also have access to the document in the system. Both the Web Client URL and FDA link are appended to the body of the email.

Administrators can configure how emails will be sent from FileHold — either links or attachments or both.

Emails can be sent either through Microsoft Outlook or via the built in email client in the Web Client. When emailing from Microsoft Outlook, emails retain the properties of messages including signature blocks and other added items like legal disclaimers.
NOTE: Users can also send a link using the Copy URL or Copy FDA Link in the Metadata pane. The link can then be pasted into an email. See Adding Metadata and File Properties for more information.

To email a document from the FDA

1. In the FDA, locate the file you want to email in the Library and click Email on the toolbar.
2. In the Email Attachment Settings window, select one of the following and click OK:
   - Attachments to the email – Sends the document as an attachment to the email.
   - Links at the end of the email body – Appends the FDA and FOC (web client) to the body of the email. When a user clicks on the link, the user will need to login to FileHold to access the document. If the user does not have the correct permissions they will not be able to access the document.

NOTE: The library administrator can configure the system to send files as either an attachment or as a link or allow the user to decide. If the function is set to allow the user to decide then they will be prompted to select an option. If not, the file will automatically be inserted into the email in the format chosen by the library administrator. See the Library Administration Guide for more information.

3. The email message is created in Microsoft Outlook with either the attachment or the links appended to the body of the email.

To email a file from the Web Client

The Web Client uses its own email client to email documents. Documents are emailed from the email address that the user is logged into the Web Client with.

1. In the Web Client, select the documents that you want to send by selecting the check box next to the document name.
2. Select Send to > Email or Email and Checkout from the FileHold toolbar.
3. The FileHold email client page opens. If configured, you can change to send the type of email sent: as attachments or links.
4. Click **Send**.

**TO EMAIL DOCUMENTS FROM MICROSOFT OUTLOOK**

1. Create a new message in Microsoft Outlook.
2. From the **FileHold integration toolbar**, click the **Add Attachment from FileHold** icon.
3. The FileHold Office Client (FOC) window opens. Select the files that you want to attach.
4. Click **Attach**.
5. The files are attached to the message as attachments.

**TO CHECK OUT AND EMAIL A DOCUMENT**

1. Locate the file you want to email in the Library and click **Check Out and Email** on the toolbar.
2. In the Email Attachment Settings window, select if you want to send the document as an attachment or a link and click **OK**. See the previous section for details.
3. The email message is created in Microsoft Outlook with either the attachment or the links appended to the body of the email. The document is also checked out of the system and the status is changed to "checked out".

### 11.16. LINKING DOCUMENTS

The ability to link documents together is a key feature that helps to organize documents into logical groups. Links give users quick and efficient access to files that are related to the document they are working with no matter where the file is stored in the Library. For example, a master contract document may be linked to its amendments.

The Linked column is visible in most views and shows the total number of documents that are directly linked to that document. These links may be of either parent or child relationship.
Linking maintains a parent-child relationship between the documents that are linked together. In other words, one document, the “parent”, will serve as the main document that all other files, the “children”, will refer to. When linking two or more documents together the user must specify the parent document in the linking relationship.

You are able to link documents that are in the same folder or from disparate areas of the library such as the search results, virtual folder, or document tray.

**TO VIEW DOCUMENT LINKS**
1. From the Linked column, double-click on the linked number.
2. The Documents linked to Document Name panel opens. All of the documents that are linked to the selected document are shown.
3. Click on the Up or Down arrow in the Parent/Child column to view the parents (Up arrow) or children (Down arrow) of the linked document.

**TO CREATE A LINK BETWEEN TWO OR MORE DOCUMENTS IN THE SAME FOLDER**
1. Select the files that are to be linked within a folder. At least two files must be selected.
2. Click Link.
3. In the Create Links Between Documents window, select the “parent” document from the list and click Link. The other files are considered “children” to the “parent” file. The documents are linked.

**TO CREATE LINKS BETWEEN DOCUMENTS FOUND IN A SEARCH**
1. Run a search.
2. Select the documents to link together and click Link. At least two files must be selected.
3. In the Create Links Between Documents window, select the “parent” document from the list and click Link. The other files are considered “children” to the “parent” file. The documents are linked.

**TO REMOVE DOCUMENT LINKS**
1. From the Linked column, double-click on the linked number.
2. The Documents linked to Document Name panel opens. All of the documents that are linked to the selected document are shown.
3. Select the document and click Remove Link. The link will be removed.

**TO LINK DOCUMENTS IN THE DOCUMENT TRAY**

1. “Move” all of the documents you want to link into the Document Tray.
2. In the Document Tray, select the files you want to link and right-click to select Link Documents.
3. In the Create Links Between Documents window, select the “parent” document from the list and click Link. The other files are considered “children” to the “parent” file.
4. The documents are now linked. You can see how many files a document is linked to in the Linked column.

**TO SEARCH FOR LINKED DOCUMENTS**

1. From the Advanced Search screen, select the search criteria Special Fields > Has Link.
2. Select Yes or No from the drop down list and click Search.

**11.17. CHANGING THE DOCUMENT VERSION OWNER**

Every document has an owner. A document owner is the user who has added that version of the document into the repository. The owner may need to be changed during the life of a document.

Organizers and cabinet administrators, for cabinets they own, can change the ownership of a document version. You can change ownership for one document at a time; it cannot be performed en masse. Cabinet administrators and higher roles can change ownership en masse using a utility.

This is useful when certain users need to initiate workflows and the system administrator permission setting “Ignore document version ownership when initiating workflows or sending Courier transmissions” is not enabled. For example, in a workflow template, the task can automatically be assigned to the document owner instead of having to set the user name each time a workflow is initiated. See Manually Initiating a Workflow for more information.

**TO CHANGE THE OWNERSHIP OF A DOCUMENT VERSION**

1. In the FDA, right-click on the document and select Change Document Owner.
   - In the Web Client, using the context sensitive menu, select Change Document Owner.
2. In the Find People window, enter a first and/or last name and click Find Now.
3. In the search results, select the user and click Select. The ownership of the document is changed to the selected user.
11.18. CREATING SHORTCUTS TO DOCUMENTS

Document shortcuts allow you to create and place shortcuts to documents in any folder that the user has access to in the Library. Users with Publisher role or higher can create shortcuts between several folders that they have access to.

Creating shortcuts does not make a copy of the document; it is only a link to the original document location.

**WARNING:** This functionality may be disabled. Contact your system administrator for information.

**TO CREATE A DOCUMENT SHORTCUT**

1. Right click on the document and select *Create Shortcut*.
2. Choose a folder in the Library that you want to put the shortcut in and click *OK*.

3. The location of the document shortcut opens. The document will have an icon with an arrow on it 🔗 indicating that is a shortcut.

11.19. RENAMING DOCUMENTS

You are able to rename documents in the Library if you have access and have a role of Publisher or higher.

Note that you cannot rename a document if the schema has a custom file naming pattern configured. See your library administrator for details.

**TO RENAME A DOCUMENT**

1. Right-click on a document and select *Rename*.
   - You can also click the *Edit* link that is in line with the document name in the folder or search view.
   - You can also edit the file name in the Metadata pane.
2. Enter a new name for the document and click *Save.*
11.20. EXPORTING DOCUMENTS IN THE FDA

You can export all documents from a cabinet, drawer, folder groups, or folders using the Export option. You can also export one or more documents from a folder. Once the Export command is selected, you can select where you want to export the documents on your local machine.

When documents are exported, they are exported with a XML file and a Documents folder containing all of the exported documents in their native format. The folder name and xml file that is generated is named with a date and timestamp appended to the end. For example: documents2015100882302.

The XML file stores the metadata of all the selected documents in a FileHold compatible format. This allows for the importation of the documents back into the document management system. For example, if you are exporting documents out of a demo system and importing them back into a production system.

Exporting can be done by users with a Document Publisher role or higher if they have access to those areas and are dependent on the role that you have:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Can export</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Document Publisher, Document Publisher + Delete</td>
<td>Documents that they own.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishers, Publisher + Delete</td>
<td>Documents, folder groups, and folders that they own.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organizer, Organizer + Delete</td>
<td>Any documents, any folder groups and any folders for the cabinets they have access to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cabinet Administrators</td>
<td>If not a cabinet owner: documents, folder groups, and folders that they own. If a cabinet owner: all drawers, folder groups, folders, and documents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library and system administrators</td>
<td>All areas of the library structure and documents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TO EXPORT DOCUMENTS FROM THE DOCUMENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

1. Right-click on a cabinet, drawer, folder, folder group, folder or document(s) name and select Export or Send to > Export.

2. You will receive a warning message asking if you want to continue with the export: "If you are attempting to export x number of documents. Are you sure you want to continue?" Click OK to proceed with the export.

3. Browse for the folder location where you want to export your documents and click OK. The documents are exported to the selected location in the Documents folder along with the XML file that contains the metadata information for each document. Both folder containing the documents and the xml file are named documents[date][time] and documents[date][time].xml, respectively.
11.21. DOWNLOADING DOCUMENTS TO A LOCAL FOLDER

You can download a copy of document to a folder on your local computer. You can browse to where you want the document downloaded. Users with a document publisher role or higher can access this function.

TO DOWNLOAD A DOCUMENT TO A LOCAL FOLDER

1. Navigate or search for the document you want to download.
2. Right-click on the document name and select Send To > Local Folder.
3. Select the folder location on your local computer and click OK.
4. A copy of the document is downloaded to the folder.

11.22. VIEWING VERSION HISTORY

The document management system retains a unique copy of each version of each file as it is checked out and back into the Library. When a document is checked in and changes have been made, FileHold automatically creates a new version of the document. FileHold versioning are simply numbered as 1,2,3,4, and so on. You can create your own numbering system with document control and version control numbers. See the Library Administration Guide for more information.

When viewing a list of documents (folder view, search view), only the most recent version of the document is displayed. The 'Ver' column shows the number of versions of a given document. You can view previous versions of a file through the version history.

When document is added to the library, it starts as version 1 and is "owned" by the person who added the document. As the document is checked out and checked back in, that number increases by 1 and the "owner" of the version changes to the person who has checked the document in. For example, Paul added a file to the document management system. That file starts as version 1 and is owned by Paul. Sally has access to the file and decides to check out the file in order to modify it with the latest report information. Sally checks the file back into the system. That file is now at version 2 and is owned by Sally.

11.22.1. Viewing Previous Versions of a Document

When viewing the version history of a document, the "History of Document Versions for Document Name" window opens with the list of the previous versions of the document shown. The document name, document schema, number of linked documents, version number, status, last modified on date, owner, and approval status is shown in the view. This view cannot be modified.

You can get a copy, delete, or email older versions of documents. You cannot check out, check out and email, or link older versions of documents. In order to work with an older version of a document, you can reinstate it as the current version (see below) or download a copy and upload it into the document management system as a new document.
TO VIEW PREVIOUS VERSION OF A DOCUMENT

1. Select a document and click on the number of versions link in the Ver column.
   • Alternatively, click on View all versions in the Version Properties area of the Metadata Pane.
2. A list of the previous versions will appear. To go back to the folder list, click Back to Folder.

11.22.2. Deleting Previous Versions

Library administrators or document owners that have Document Publisher + Delete permissions are able to delete previous versions of files. Document owners may only delete the previous version of a document whereas library administrators can delete any version(s) of the file in the document management system. This means that the versions shown in the version history list are the ones that have not been explicitly deleted.

TO DELETE A PREVIOUS VERSION OF A DOCUMENT

1. View the Version History of a document. Select the version you want to delete and click Remove (X).
2. In the Delete Files window, select a deletion option:
   • Delete only the versions of the files I have selected.
   • Delete all versions of each file that I have permission to delete.
3. Click OK. The version of the document is removed. If you need to recover the document, contact your library administrator.

11.22.3. Reinstating a Previous Version as the Latest Version

When viewing previous versions of a document the user can reinstate any of the previous versions of the document as the latest version. This allows users to work with older versions of documents such as checking out, initiating a workflow, or linking to other documents. For example, the current version is 5 but a lot of mistakes occurred in that version and you would like to restart from version 4. Since you cannot check out version 4, you can reinstate it as the latest version (which would be 6) in order to check out and work on the document.

TO REINSTATE A PREVIOUS VERSION AS THE LATEST VERSION

1. Select a previous version of a document and click Reinstate as Latest Version.
2. In the Reinstate as Latest Version window, select one of the following options:
- Yes, reinstate the selected version’s metadata.
- No, keep current metadata values.

3. Click **OK**. The document is reinstated as the latest version. In other words, the version number will increase by 1 with the older document as the latest version.

### 11.22.4. Viewing Edits to Metadata for Older Document Versions

The system logs all edits to metadata for each version of a document.

**To view edits to metadata**

1. To view the metadata edits for a version of a document, select the version(s) from the history of versions list and click **Edits to Metadata**.

2. To view a detailed description, click **Show Metadata Edits** link in the Metadata Change History view. The metadata pane opens with a list of who made the metadata change, when it was made and what was changed. Any changes are shown in bold font.

### 11.22.5. Viewing the Document Usage of Document Versions

You can view how one or more of a document version has been used. The document management system tracks how a document has been used. For example, if a document has been emailed, checked out, linked, viewed, and so on you can see what actions have been taken on a document. You can see who the action performer is and when the action was performed plus any details pertaining to the action (such as a change in ownership).

Library administrators can also use the Document Usage Log to see how documents were used.

**To view the usage of a file**

1. In the Version History list, select one or more (using the CTRL or SHIFT keys) document versions and click **Usage of File**.

2. The File Usage for Document Name window opens with a list of all of the actions taken upon the document versions, which user performed the action and when the action was performed.

3. To return to the version history, click **Version History**.

### 11.22.6. Viewing the Sign Off Sheet

The Sign Off Sheet shows a list of all users that either approved or rejected this version of the document, when they did it and if they signed-off on behalf of someone else.

If this was a multi-document workflow, all documents that were a part of the approval process will be shown in the sign off sheet.
TO VIEW THE SIGN OFF SHEET

1. In the folder or search view, do one of the following:
   - Right-click on a document and select Workflow > View Sign Off Sheet.
   - In the Version History screen, click Sign-off Sheet.
2. The Sign Off Sheet pane opens below with a list of all users that have approved or rejected all of the documents in the workflow.
3. Click X to close the Sign Off Sheet pane.

11.22.7. Viewing Workflow Reviews and Approvals

The review and approval history shows each task that was completed in the workflow. The first level in the workflow shows information about the workflow instance itself. Information includes the type of workflow (the workflow template name), the name and version of the document, who the initiator is, when the workflow started and when it is due and if the workflow resulted in the document being approved or not.

To expand the workflow details, click the + sign in the FDA or the > arrow in the Web Client next to the document name. In the task details, the percentage completed, the comments or feedback documents provided by participants, the completion date, the due date, and status (reviewed or approved) is shown.

The review and approval history can only be seen by those users who have completed the task and senior administrators.

TO VIEW THE WORKFLOW REVIEWS AND APPROVALS

1. In the folder or search view, do one of the following:
   - In the FDA, right-click on a document and select Workflow > View Review and Approval History.
   - In the Web Client, click the arrow next to the document name and select Review and Approval History.
   - In the Version History screen, click Reviews & Approvals.
2. The Document Review and Approval History window opens with a list of all workflow tasks.
3. To print the list of reviews and approvals click Print (FDA only). Note: The report will be printed exactly how it appears on the screen.
4. To export the list of reviews and approvals click Export (FDA only). When exporting the report, you can choose to export only the workflow or you can include both the workflows and the tasks. The report can be exported to CSV or HTML. Note that for the HTML report, the workflow must be expanded in the Workflow Status Report results to print the tasks. In other words, the HTML report will be exported to look exactly how it appears on the screen.
5. To return to the version history, click Back to Version History.
6. To return to the folder, click Back to Folder.

11.23. SETTING DOCUMENT ALERTS AND REMINDERS

Document alerts allow you to be alerted of changes that occur to files or folders kept in the library. For example, a user in payroll subscribes to an Expense Reports folder that notifies
them of when an expense report needs processing by sending an alert. You can choose to set alerts on both folders and/or documents. Once changes have been made to either the folder or the document, you receive an alert in the Document Alerts area of My FileHold. You can set the type of document or folder changes you want to be notified of and the email address to send the notifications to in your Alert Preferences.

Document reminders allow you to be reminded of when a document requires attention in the future. For example, you can be reminded monthly to update expense reports or to review yearly employee contracts that are up for renewal. Once a reminder comes due, you receive an email (if configured) and an alert in the Document Reminders area of My FileHold. You can set reminder preferences in your Alert Preferences.

**TO SET AN ALERT ON A FOLDER OR DOCUMENT**

1. Right-click on a folder or document and select:
   - Alert Me of Changes on a folder.
   - Notify Me > Alert Me of Changes on a document.
2. You will receive a message stating that “You have subscribed to be alerted when this file changes”. Click OK.
   
   If you subscribed to a folder, the folder icon will have an email icon on it indicating you are subscribed to the folder.
3. You will receive email notifications about your alerts if the system has been configured. You can also view and manage your alerts in My FileHold > Document Alerts. See how to manage your alerts.

**TO SET A REMINDER ON A DOCUMENT**

1. Right-click on a folder or document and select Notify Me > Set a Reminder on a document.
2. In the Add Reminder for Document Name window, enter the date in which you wish to receive the reminder.
3. Enter the frequency in which you wish to receive the reminder: Once Only, Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, Bi-Annually, or Annually.
4. Click OK.
5. You will receive email notifications about your reminders if the system has been configured. You can also view and manage your alerts in My FileHold > Document Reminders. See how to manage your reminders.

11.23.1. **Managing Alerts and Reminders**

Users can view and manage their document subscriptions (alerts and reminders) in the Document Alerts and Document Reminders areas of My FileHold.

Document reminders are those documents that require attention on a certain date and time period. You can view your document reminders in My FileHold > Document Reminders. You may also receive an email notification if your alert preferences are configured to do so.

Document alerts are those documents or folders that have been set to trigger an alert. You can view your document alerts in My FileHold > Document Alerts. You may also receive an email notification if your alert preferences are configured to do so. Folder alerts are triggered when:

- New documents are added to the folder.
- Documents are transferred to the folders.
- Documents are deleted from folders.

Document alerts are triggered when:
- A new version of a document is checked in.
- Metadata values are updated.

In order to receive any new alerts on a document, the current alert must be “marked as read”. Once documents are marked as read, then any new alerts are emailed and appear in the Document Alerts folder.

Users must be subscribed to the folder or document prior to receiving an alert. See Setting Document Alerts and Reminders.

You can determine which type of alerts you want to receive by setting the Alert Preferences. See Alert Preferences for more information.

TO MARK AN ALERT OR REMINDER AS READ

1. Go to My FileHold > Document Alerts or Document Reminders and select an alert or reminder.
2. Click Mark as Read. The alert or reminder is removed from the list.

TO REMOVE AN ALERT OR REMINDER

1. Go to My FileHold > Document Alerts or Document Reminders and click Manage Alerts or Manage Reminders.
2. In the Manage My Alerts or Manage My Reminders window, select the file or folder you want to remove the subscription to and click Remove X.

TO DISABLE AN ALERT ON A FOLDER

1. Right-click on a folder that has an alert and select Disable this Alert.
12. LIBRARY ARCHIVE

The Library Archive is the area where documents that are no longer in use but still need to be kept for historical record purposes reside. The advantage of archiving is that it keeps your current documents in the Library and search results uncluttered with old or obsolete information. Once documents are in the Library Archive, they can still be searched using the Include Archive in Search check box under the Advanced Search area.

Documents can be archived using two methods:

- Manually archiving. Users with a cabinet administrator role or higher can move electronic documents manually from the library into the library archive. Cabinet and library administrators must be the owners of the cabinets in the library archive area in order to move documents in and out of the archive. You need to enable the permission setting in the Administration Panel.

- Using a scheduled event to automatically archive documents. See the Library Administration Guide for more information on scheduled events.

Documents that have been placed in the library archive:

- Left in the library archive indefinitely.
- Deleted from the library archive using an Event Schedule. See the Library Administration Guide for more information on scheduled events.
- Moved back into the Library manually should the need arise.

When documents are sent to the archive, the cabinet/drawer/folder group/folder structure is automatically duplicated. There is no need to recreate the structure. The security settings at the cabinet and folder levels are also maintained.

TO MANUALLY SEND A DOCUMENT, CABINET, DRAWER, FOLDER GROUP, OR FOLDER INTO THE ARCHIVE

1. Right-click on a folder and select Archive Folder or document and select Send to > Library Archive.

2. The documents and/or folders are sent to the Library Archive and the cabinet/drawer/folder group/folder structure is copied as well.

TO MOVE ARCHIVED ITEMS BACK TO THE LIBRARY

1. In the Library Archive, select the document or folder and select Copy or Move.

2. Select the Move files to a new location in the Library option and click Next.

3. Select the destination in the Library for the documents or folder and click OK.

4. At the alert message click OK. The documents and/or folder are moved back to the Library.
13. USING THE DOCUMENT TRAY

The Document Tray allows users to collect and perform actions on documents that are filed in various folders throughout the system. The document tray behaves much like a shopping cart in an e-commerce application in that it provides a temporary holding bin for documents that users wish to perform actions on.

The Document Tray helps users perform the same actions on documents that are stored in different folders. All actions available on the toolbar and right click commands are supported in the document tray including get copy, check out, move/copy, email, link and delete.

**NOTE:** Documents that are in the Document Tray are not copied or moved. The Document Tray is only making reference to the documents located elsewhere in library.

**TO OPEN THE DOCUMENT TRAY**

1. In FDA, click on the Document Tray icon on the lower right side of the screen.
2. In the Web Client, click Document Tray located at the top of the hierarchy panel.

The Document Tray opens at the bottom of the screen. In FDA, you can adjust the size of the Document Tray using the slider arrow. The Document Tray in the Web Client is self-adjusting. It will expand to fit the documents automatically.

**TO ADD DOCUMENTS TO THE DOCUMENT TRAY**

1. There are many ways to send documents to the FileHold to the Document Tray. Do one of the following:
In FDA or Web Client, select the document you wish to add to the document tray. Right-click on the file and select **Send to > Document Tray**. You can select multiple documents and send them to the Document Tray en masse.

In the Web Client, place a check mark next to the documents you want to move into the Document Tray and select **Sent To > Tray**.

In FDA, drag and drop document(s) from one or more folders and into the Document Tray.

**WARNING**: You cannot drag and drop documents in the Web Client.

**TO CLEAR FILES FROM THE DOCUMENT TRAY**

Removing documents from the document tray does not delete the file from the library. The document will remain in the same location.

1. Select the documents you wish to remove from the tray and click **Clear**.
14. USING THE DOCUMENT VIEWERS

Viewers have many user features and many benefits that increase productivity and save companies money. Viewers come included with each registered user license and assigned to registered users by the system administrator. Different viewers are available for use with FileHold:

- PDF/Image Viewer (FDA only)
- FileHold viewer level 1 (web and FDA viewer)
- FileHold viewer level 2 (web and FDA viewer)

If a user is assigned a FileHold viewer level 1 or level 2 viewer license, then they are also able to use the PDF/Image viewer in the FDA.

Viewer behavior can be configured in the User Preferences > Viewer tab.

NOTE: Starting in 2017, Brava viewer licenses are no longer available for new FileHold purchases. Previously purchased Brava viewer licenses are still available for use in the FileHold Desktop Application. See the Knowledge Base for more information on how to use the Brava viewer.

14.1. FULL AND PARTIAL SCREEN VIEWS IN THE FDA

The interface of the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA) can be modified to accommodate seeing more information in the library tree and metadata pane when the viewer is in use.

Both the library tree and the metadata pane can be set to “full” or “partial” view mode when the viewer is open. Full mode extends the panes to the bottom of the screen where partial mode decreases the pane size to the same level as the viewer pane. This full mode feature allows users to look at more information in these areas while still viewing a document.

The Full and Partial buttons appear in the Library Tree and Metadata Pane only when the viewer is activated. Full mode is useful when looking at a document and entering metadata at the same time.
The FDA with the library tree in "partial" mode and metadata pane in “full” mode

14.2. PDF/IMAGE VIEWER

The PDF/Image viewer supports the following file formats:
- PDF
- TIFF (single or multi-page)
- Image files (jpg, png, gif, bmp)

The PDF/Image viewer can be used in the FileHold Desktop Application and allows users to do a number of actions on files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>PDF/Viewer Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Modify a PDF or TIFF file</td>
<td>- Reorder pages using drag and drop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Insert a PDF or TIFF file into the current PDF or TIFF file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Drag and drop pages between PDF and TIFF documents (of the same format) if the option to open documents in separate tabs is enabled. This can be enabled in the User Preferences &gt; Viewer tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delete pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Publish as a PDF as a new document, a new version of a document, or as a local document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify how the file is viewed</td>
<td>- Open multiple documents at a time. Each file is shown on a separate tab. Note that the tabbing feature needs to be enabled in the User Preferences &gt; Viewer tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- View thumbnails pages of a document. The thumbnail pane can be expanded or collapsed using a button on the toolbar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Change the orientation of the thumbnail pane. It can be set to the top, bottom, left or right side of the viewer pane. The orientation of the pane is set in the User Preferences &gt; Viewer tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Select multiple pages of the document via the thumbnails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Undock the viewer so it is in its own window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Pages can be rotated 90 degrees clockwise or counter-clockwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The size of the image can zoomed and can be set to a fixed zoom level. For example, 100%, 150%, page width and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Scroll between pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify an image file</td>
<td>- Append an image to the current image file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Insert an image from one image file to another image file using drag and drop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Save the image file as a jpeg file or publish as a TIFF file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Delete images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other actions</td>
<td>- Print the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Open documents in FileHold or from your local computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Open documents in the Brava viewer (if you are assigned a license).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If a user is assigned a Brava viewer license, they can also use the PDF/Image viewer with the Brava viewer, with the Brava viewer being the default viewer. They can use the function Open to Reorder Pages/Images to open the document in the PDF/Image viewer. Note that starting in 2017, Brava viewer licenses are no longer available for new FileHold purchases. Previously purchased Brava viewer licenses are still available for use.

**NOTE:** If you have the “Automatically open Document in Viewer” options selected in the User Preferences, the documents will only be opened in a single pane as you scroll through the documents.

### 14.2.1. Modifying a PDF or TIFF File

The following actions can be taken on a PDF or TIFF file:

- Reorder pages using drag and drop
- Insert a PDF or TIFF file into the current PDF or TIFF file.
- Drag and drop pages between PDF and TIFF documents (of the same format) if the option to open documents in separate tabs is enabled. This can be enabled in the User Preferences > Viewer tab.
- Delete pages
- Publish as a PDF as a new document, a new version of a document, or as a local document.

**To use the PDF/Image viewer to reorder pages or images**

1. Right-click on a PDF or multiple page TIFF file and select Open to Reorder Pages/Images. The document opens in the viewer.
2. Move the pages around using the drag and drop method.

**To drag and drop a page between two files**

1. Have two PDF or TIFF files open in separate tabs in the PDF/Image viewer. In order to do this, you will need the “Open documents in the Document Viewer using separate tabs” option selected in the User Preferences > Viewer tab.
2. Select one or more page from the originating document.
3. Drag and drop a page from one tab to the other tab and select a location for the page(s) in the thumbnail view. A black bar is shown where the page(s) will be moved to.

**TO PUBLISH AS A PDF DOCUMENT**

1. After modifying a PDF document in the PDF/Image viewer, go to File > Publish to PDF.
2. Select one of the options:
   - Save this published version as a new local document - Saves the document to your local computer. Save or open the file to the local computer.
   - Save this published version as a new document in FileHold - Saves the document as a new document to the library. If saving as a new document in the library, set the folder location for the document and fill out any related metadata and click Submit.
   - Create a new version of the file you are publishing – Creates a new version of the document. A new version is automatically created.

**TO DELETE PAGES FROM A FILE**

1. Select the page or pages you want to delete in the thumbnail images. You can multi-select pages using the CTRL or SHIFT keys.
2. Go to Edit > Remove Pages or click the Remove Pages button.

**TO INSERT A PDF OR TIFF FILE INTO A PDF OR TIFF FILE**

1. Open the document to be modified.
2. Select the page in the thumbnail view that you want to insert pages before or after the currently selected image.
3. Go to Edit > Insert File Before or Insert File After.
4. Select the file to be inserted. It can be a local file or a file from the FileHold library. The file is inserted into the current document.

**14.2.2. Modifying an Image File**

The following actions can be taken on image files (jpg, gif, png, bmp):

- Append an image to the current image file.
- Insert an image from one image file to another image file using drag and drop.
- Save the image file as a jpeg file or publish as a TIFF file.

**TO INSERT AN IMAGE FILE INTO AN IMAGE FILE**

1. Open the document to be modified.
2. Select the page in the thumbnail view that you want to insert pages before or after the currently selected image.
3. Go to Edit > Insert File Before or Insert File After.
4. Select the file to be inserted. It can be a local file or a file from the FileHold library. The file is inserted into the current document.
TO DRAG AND DROP AN IMAGE FILE INTO ANOTHER IMAGE FILE

1. Have two image files open in separate tabs in the PDF/Image viewer. In order to do this, you will need the "Open documents in the Document Viewer using separate tabs" option selected in the User Preferences.

2. Drag and drop an image from one tab to the other tab.

TO SAVE A PAGE AS AN IMAGE FILE (JPEG)

1. After modifying a PDF document in the PDF/Image viewer, go to File > Save Page As.

2. Save the current page to your local machine as a jpeg file.

14.2.3. Other Actions of the PDF/Image Viewer

TO PRINT A DOCUMENT

- Go to File > Print or click the Print button.

TO UNDOCK THE VIEWER

- Click the Undock Viewer button.

TO CLOSE A DOCUMENT IN A TAB

- Click the X in the tab or go to File > Close File.

NOTE: If you have the "Automatically open Document in Viewer" options selected in the User Preferences, the documents will only be opened in a single pane as you scroll through the documents.

14.3. FILEHOLD VIEWER LEVEL 1 AND 2

The FileHold level 1 and 2 viewers allow users to view image files (jpg, jpeg, png, bmp, gif, tif, tiff), Microsoft Word (docx), and PDF documents in both the Web Client and FileHold Desktop Application (FDA). Each registered user account comes standard with a FileHold level 1 viewer. A system administrator can change this to a level 2 viewer in the user account, if purchased.

See the table below for features support by the level 1 and level 2 viewers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Level 1</th>
<th>Level 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open multiple documents</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publish document to local computer</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publish document to FileHold</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print document</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically open documents in folders and search results</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic annotations and markup</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With the FileHold viewer, some features of some of the supported file formats are not supported for viewing. For example, if viewing docx type files, generally only plain text is properly rendered. Other items such as tables, images, word art, headers, footers, and footnotes may be partially shown or not shown at all. Only internal document links work in the
FileHold Viewer. External links, while showing as hyperlinked, do not work. It is recommended that you test your documents in the viewer in order to determine how your documents are rendered.

NOTE: The help link for the FileHold viewer in the FDA does not work on Windows Server 2012R2.

TO USE THE FILEHOLD VIEWER
1. In the FDA or Web Client, select an image file (jpg, png, bmp, gif, tiff), Microsoft Word (docx), or PDF document.
2. Using the contextual menu, select View Document. The document is opened with thumbnails displayed on the left side of the viewer. The currently selected page is displayed in the main part of the viewer.
3. To manipulate the pages, use the toolbar buttons to zoom in and out, navigate between pages, and close the viewer to return to the list of documents. See the table below for a list of functions and descriptions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zoom In</td>
<td>Zooms in on the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoom Out</td>
<td>Zooms out from the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fit to Width</td>
<td>Adjusts the image on the screen to fit the full width of the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Best Fit</td>
<td>Adjusts the image on the screen so the entire image is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Size</td>
<td>Shows the full image size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close Viewer</td>
<td>Closes the viewer and returns to the folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous Page</td>
<td>Previous image is displayed in the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Page</td>
<td>Next image is displayed in the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;page number&gt;</td>
<td>Enter a page number to show the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print</td>
<td>Prints the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submit</td>
<td>Add document as a PDF into the FileHold repository as a new document, as a new version, or save as a local copy of the document.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TO USE ANNOTATIONS FOR THE FILEHOLD VIEWER LEVEL 2

1. In the FDA or Web Client, select an image file (jpg, png, bmp, gif, tiff), Microsoft Word (docx), or PDF document.

2. Using the contextual menu, select View Document. The document is opened with thumbnails displayed on the left side of the viewer. The currently selected page is displayed in the main part of the viewer.

3. To annotate the pages, select the Annotations icon. To return to the thumbnails view, select the Thumbnails icon.

4. Select the annotation option, fill out the related annotation properties, and then draw on the screen where the annotation is to be placed. Use the following table to learn more about annotations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Highlighter</td>
<td>Allows you to add a rectangle highlighter annotation onto a document. A number of highlighter properties are available to set the colour and rotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freehand highlighter</td>
<td>Allows you to draw a freehand highlighter annotation onto a document. A number of freehand highlighter properties are available to set the colour, rotation, and border width.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubber stamp</td>
<td>Allows you to add a rubber stamp annotation onto a document. A number of stamp properties are available such as font, colour, opacity, rotation, borders, radius, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectangle</td>
<td>Allows you to add a rectangle annotation onto a document. A number of rectangle properties are available to set the colour, opacity, rotation, borders, radius, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ellipse</td>
<td>Allows you to add an ellipse annotation onto a document. A number of ellipse properties are available to set the colour, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line</td>
<td>Allows you to add a line annotation onto a document. A number of line properties are available to set the colour, start and end cap, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connected lines</td>
<td>Allows you to add a connected line annotation onto a document. A number of connected line properties are available to set the colour, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freehand</td>
<td>Allows you to draw a freehand annotation onto a document. A number of freehand properties are available to set the colour, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrow</td>
<td>Allows you to add a line arrow annotation onto a document. A number of arrow properties are available to set the arrow height, width, colour, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruler</td>
<td>Allows you to add a ruler annotation onto a document. The total length of the line is displayed. A number of ruler properties are available to set the font, font size, colour, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygon ruler</td>
<td>Allows you to add a polygon ruler annotation onto a document. The total length of the polygon is displayed. A number of polygon ruler properties are available to set the font, font size, colour, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>Allows you to add a text annotation onto a document. A number of text properties are available to set the measurement unit, colour, position, justification, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sticky note</td>
<td>Allows you to add a sticky note annotation onto a document. A number of sticky note properties are available to set the font, font size, colour, position, justification, opacity, rotation, borders, and line styles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To publish as a PDF document**

1. Click Submit.
2. Select one of the options:
   - Save this published version as a new local document - Saves the document to your local computer. Save or open the file to the local computer.
   - Save this published version as a new document in FileHold - Saves the document as a new document to the library. If saving as a new document in the library, set the folder location for the document and fill out any related metadata and click Submit.
   - Create a new version of the file you are publishing – Creates a new version of the document. A new version is automatically created.
3. Click OK.
**NOTE:** Closing the FileHold Viewer in the FDA will not remove any annotations. In order to clear annotations on the document, close the X on tab.
15. SETTING PREFERENCES

Preferences and Settings allows you to modify the document management system to suit your personal needs. You can modify your password, document list views, document alerts, workflow (if purchased), and FastFind preferences (if purchased).

Some, none, or all of these settings may be determined and/or enforced by your system administrator. See your system administrator for details.

TO SET PREFERENCES

1. Do one of the following:
   - In FDA, go to File > Preferences and Settings.
   - In Web Client, right-click on My FileHold to access View, Alert and User preferences. Right-click on Reviews & Approvals to access the Workflow preferences.
   - In the Web Client, go to Administration Panel > My FileHold.

2. Set the following preferences:
   - View Preferences
   - User Preferences
   - Alert Preferences
   - Workflow Preferences
   - FastFind Preferences (FDA only)
   - Reset My Password (Web Client only)

15.1. USER PREFERENCES

The User Preferences allows you to edit your contact and password information. This includes the users account information, contact information, company information as well as default language preferences.

The General tab contains user’s account setting information. The Contact and Company tabs contain user contact and company information respectively. The Advanced tab allows the user to manage the functionality of the system. Some, none, or all of these settings may be determined and/or enforced by your system administrator. See your system administrator for details.

TO SET THE USER PREFERENCES

1. In FileHold Desktop Application (FDA), go to File menu > Preferences and Settings > User Preferences.
   - In the Web Client, right-click on My FileHold and select My User Preferences.
   - In the Web Client, go to Administration Panel > My FileHold > User Preferences.

2. The General tab contains the user account information. Use the following table to fill out the information in the General tab:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>Your first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field Name</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Name</strong></td>
<td>Your last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User Logon Name</strong></td>
<td>You are not able to modify your user name in the User Preferences. Contact your system administrator if you need to change your user name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source</strong></td>
<td>Local FileHold account or a domain account (synchronized with Microsoft Active Directory).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Language</strong></td>
<td>Select the default language. This is typically English. If the language you want is not available please contact your system administrator and ask them about obtaining additional language packs from FileHold Systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default page after log in (Web Client only)</strong></td>
<td>Determines the window that is displayed after log in: Blank, Simple Search, Advanced Search, My Tasks, or Dashboard (if permitted. See your system administrator for details).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edit metadata upon Check In Action (Web Client only)</strong></td>
<td>When enabled, the metadata pane is displayed in edit mode after a new version is checked in. This allows the user to enter new metadata. If disabled, the user can check the document back in without editing metadata.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clear required metadata fields upon Check In (Web Client only)</strong></td>
<td>When enabled, any required fields in the schema are automatically blanked out (current value is deleted) when checking in a new version of a document. The users are forced to fill in the required field prior to checking in the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of expanded drawers (Web Client only)</strong></td>
<td>The number of drawers that can be simultaneously expanded in the library tree can be set. The lower number of expanded drawers allows for a faster page loading time due to the lower number of permissions that needs to be calculated before displaying the library structure to the user. The last drawers that were opened by the user are preserved when the library is refreshed. The default is 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reset all &quot;Don't Show This Message Again&quot; reminders (Web Client Only)</strong></td>
<td>If you have selected any &quot;don't show this message again&quot; check boxes in various windows, you can have them reappear by clicking <strong>Reset</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Change Password (FDA only)</strong></td>
<td>Click <strong>Change Password</strong> to change your password if you are using a locally-managed account. In the Set Password, enter your old password and a new password twice and click <strong>OK</strong>. NOTE: If you are using a domain user account (Active Directory), you will not be able to change your password. See your system administrator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. In the FDA only, in the Advanced tab, select the settings you want enabled. **NOTE:** These options may be locked down by your system administrator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default Local Working Folder (FDA only)</td>
<td>This is where your working documents are stored on your local machine. This is the path to where documents are checked out and downloaded. To change the path, click <strong>Browse</strong> and select the new working folder location. <strong>NOTE:</strong> For the Web Client, documents are downloaded to the location that is set in your web browser settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default page at start-up</td>
<td>Determines the window that is displayed after log in: Blank, Simple Search, Advanced Search, My Tasks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Format of document imports       | Select one of the following options:  
  - QuickScan Pro – select this option if you are using the EMC Captiva QuickScan Pro scanning software.  
  - Capture – select this option if you are using SmartSoft Capture scanning software.  
  - Both – select this option if any users could be using both QuickScan Pro and Capture at the same scanning station, for example sharing inboxes and imports, or using the Outlook Watched folder and Capture at this computer.  

  *If you are using the “Both” option, ensure that folder you select for the import profile contains only one type of XML files. The rule also applied for any of its subfolders. Capture and QSP XML files cannot coexist in the same folder tree.* |
<p>| Number of expanded drawers        | The number of drawers that can be simultaneously expanded in the library tree can be set. The lower number of expanded drawers allows for a faster page loading time due to the lower number of permissions that needs to be calculated before displaying the library structure to the user. The last drawers that were opened by the user are preserved when the library is refreshed. The default is 3. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Click To Tag</td>
<td>When enabled, the Click To Tag button appears in the metadata pane and allows you to “click” or “rubber band” text, numbers, dates, etc. on the screen and inserts the value into the metadata field of the schema. If disabled, the Click to Tag button does not appear in the metadata pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Welcome Screen at Startup</td>
<td>Displays the FileHold Welcome Screen after you start the FDA: Blank, Simple Search, Advanced Search, Inbox, My Tasks, or Calendar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt me for download location when I make copies of files</td>
<td>Allows you to select a location on your local machine to save your copied files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt me for download location when I check out files</td>
<td>Allows you to select a location on your local machine to save your checked out files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt me to remove files when sending them from the Inbox</td>
<td>A prompt will ask you if you want to remove the files from your local machine when sending them from the Inbox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt me to clean up my FileHold working folder when I close the FileHold Desktop Application</td>
<td>A prompt will ask you if you want to remove the files in your working folder on your local machine when you exit out of FDA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By default close documents that I add/check in to FileHold</td>
<td>Documents will be closed in their native application when it is checked in or added to the Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By default delete documents that I add to FileHold</td>
<td>Documents will be deleted from the working folder on your local machine after they are added to the Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By default delete documents that I Check In to FileHold</td>
<td>Documents will be deleted from the working folder on your local machine after they are checked into the Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-send documents to Auto-Tagged folders</td>
<td>Documents in the Inbox will be automatically sent to their location in the Library if the folder is Auto-tagged. You will not need to click the Auto-File button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto-send documents after completing metadata</td>
<td>Documents in the Inbox will be automatically sent to their location in the Library after the metadata has been sent. You will not need to click the Send or Send All button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move to recycle bin instead of permanently deleting</td>
<td>Documents that are set to be deleted after checking in or adding to the Library will be moved to the Recycle Bin on your local machine instead of being deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Enable Smart Check In and Smart Check Out messages | Smart messages are the messages that appear when checking in and out a document using Microsoft Office applications. This setting is enabled by default. To turn off “Smart Messages”, clear the check box. Examples of smart messages that are displayed in Microsoft Office applications from FileHold are:  
- When saving and closing a document without checking in a checked out document.  
- When getting a local copy of a document, making edits, and saving without checking out the document.  
- When checking out and opening a document and close the document after making no changes.  
- When opening and checking out a document (CTRL+double-click), and closing the document without making any changes. |
| Edit metadata upon Check in action                 | When enabled, the metadata pane is displayed in edit mode after a new version is checked in. This allows the user to enter new metadata. If disabled, the user can check the document back in without editing metadata. |
| Clear required metadata fields upon Check In       | When enabled, any required fields in the schema are automatically blanked out (current value is deleted) when checking in a new version of a document. The users are forced to fill in the required field prior to checking in the document. |
| Reset all “Don’t Show This Message Again” reminders | If you have selected any “don’t show this message again” check boxes in various windows, you can have them reappear by clicking Reset. |

4. In the Viewer tab (FDA only), select the check boxes next to the features to enable. Note: These options may be locked down by your system administrator.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PDF/Image viewer only</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation of thumbnail view</td>
<td>Select the position of the thumbnails in the PDF/Image viewer: Top, Bottom, Right or Left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PDF/Image viewer and Brava viewer</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically open in the Viewer selected</td>
<td>Any selected document in the Inbox will open in the Viewer automatically. If this option is selected, only one tab will be opened at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>document in Inbox</td>
<td>This prevents users from opening several tabs at a time and using up a lot of system memory in the process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NOTE:</strong> Starting in 2017, Brava viewer licenses are no longer available for new FileHold purchases. Previously purchased Brava viewer licenses are still available for use in the FileHold Desktop Application.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open documents in the Document Viewer using</td>
<td>Documents will be opened in multiple tabs in the viewer. NOTE: This option cannot be selected in conjunction with the “Automatically open in the Viewer selected document in folders and search results” or “Automatically open in the Viewer selected document in Inbox” options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separate tabs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow opening one document in multiple tabs</td>
<td>A single document can be opened several times in multiple tabs using both Brava and PDF/Image viewers. Note that “Open documents in the Document Viewer using separate tabs” needs to be enabled in order to enable this feature. This feature is useful in multiple monitor situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>All viewers</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically open in the Viewer selected</td>
<td>Any selected document in the folder view or search results will open in the Viewer automatically. If this option is selected, only one tab will be opened at a time. This prevents users from opening several tabs at a time and using up a lot of system memory in the process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>document in folders and search results</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. In the Contact Information tab, enter your personal contact information. This is for both the FDA and the Web Client. This information may be filled out if you are an Active Directory user.

6. In the Company tab, enter your organization information. This is for both the FDA and Web Client. This information may be filled out if you are an Active Directory user.

7. Click OK.
15.2. VIEW PREFERENCES

You can create or modify “views” in order to suit how you want documents displayed. There are several different view types, such as the folder list, checked-out documents, Inbox, Document Tray, and so on. You can customize each view to display specific columns and determine how you want the view sorted and grouped. The views can be made private or public which allows other users to access them. Users can also set a default view which displays the documents according to the default type unless otherwise specified. Changes to your view settings will not affect how other users view their folders or lists.

The following is an example of a folder list view. You can change your view type by selecting an option from the Select View drop-down list.

The benefit of customizing the views is that the user is able to see key information on a file without having to open up the file or view its metadata. For example, if a user is working in an engineering department and the majority of documents to be stored in the library will have a ‘Part Number’ metadata value associated with it, then the part number field can be added as a column in the users folder display.

The number of documents that are displayed per “page” is set in the view preferences. In the FDA, there can be 5 to 1000 documents displayed per page. In the Web Client, there can be 5 to 30 documents displayed per page. The page numbers are shown in the right-hand top and bottom areas of the screen. The number of documents that are shown in the FileHold Office Client window when using the Microsoft Office Add-Ins can also be configured.

Library administrators can create views and set them as the system default for all users. They can also reset the personal views of other users to a global view of their choice. They can also assign default views to cabinets, folders, virtual folders, and saved searches.
View settings are exclusive to the user, however Views can be made public allowing other users of the document management system to use them if you are an Administrator. Changes to one users view settings will not affect how other users view their folders or lists.

**NOTE:** If you are logged in as an Administrator and are modifying a Public View (such as adding or removing columns), the document management software will automatically create a new Personal view using the changes made to the existing Public view.

**TO SET YOUR VIEW PREFERENCES**

1. Do one of the following:
   - In FDA, go to File > Preferences and Settings > View Preferences.
   - In Web Client, right-click on My FileHold and select View Preferences.
   - In the Web Client, go to Administration Panel > My FileHold > View Preferences.

2. In My Global View Preferences window, use the following table to fill out the form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select View Type</td>
<td>Select the view type you want to customize: Checked Out Documents, Document Alerts, Document Reminders, Document Tray, Folder List, Inbox, Linked Document List, My Favourites, My Workflow Tasks, Recently Accessed, Recently Added, Search Results, Workflow Documents (Show Documents pane), and Virtual Folder. For example, Checked out Documents will customize the My FileHold &gt; Checked out Documents list. Inbox will customize the Inbox view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select View</td>
<td>Select a view from the list if it already exists for that view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Click Add to create new view. Enter a view name and select if it is a Personal or Public view and click OK. A personal view will only visible to you while public views can be seen by all users. Only Administrators can create public views.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Click Edit to modify the name of the view. Rename the view and/or select a view type (personal or public) and click OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Click Delete to delete a view. Click OK at the confirmation message. The view is deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set as System Default View</td>
<td>When logged in as Library or system administrator, you can add a new System Default View for the system. When creating a new System Default View, you must make the new view a Public view. Then click Set as System Default View. Now all users will see this view when logging onto the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set as My Default View</td>
<td>When creating a new view, you can set it as your own default view. This view overrides the System Default View in any of the view types that do not have a designated view applied to them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create My Personal View</td>
<td>Create a personal view for a view type not seen by any other user such as personal search view or personal virtual folder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Current Fields/Columns used in this view | Lists all the column names, their descriptions, and the order they are sorted across the screen.  
To reorder the columns, select a number from the drop-down list.  
To remove a column, click the X.                                                                                          |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add a field (column) to the view</td>
<td>Select a metadata or system value to add to the view from the list and click Add Field. Once you have added a field, you can sort the order of the columns in the Order Column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sort view by</td>
<td>Select the column you want to sort by from the drop-down list and select if you want the documents displayed in ascending or descending order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group by</td>
<td>Select the check box and select how you want the documents grouped. Select a descending or ascending order. This is only available in the FDA. In the example below, the documents are grouped by Document Schema:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show x items in this view (Web Client only)</td>
<td>Enter the number of documents you want displayed in the Web Client. Enter a value from 5 to 30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of documents per page – Main FDA window (FDA only)</td>
<td>Enter the number of documents you want displayed “per page” in the FileHold Desktop Application. For example, if you have 4000 documents in a single folder, then 500 documents will be shown on a “page”. It is recommended that this value be set to 500.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of documents – FOC windows (FDA only)</td>
<td>Enter the number of documents you want displayed “per page” in the FileHold Office Client window. It is recommended that this value be set to 20.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Click Apply or OK to save the view settings.

15.2.1. Creating Ad-Hoc Views

You can modify any view by adding or removing columns, grouping documents, expand or collapse groups, or reorder columns “on the fly”.

**To create ad-hoc views**

1. In any view, right-click on a column header and select one of the following:
   - Group By – Group documents by document name, type, linked, version, status, or last modified date.
   - Add / Remove Columns – Add or remove columns from the view. All system values and metadata values can be added or removed from the view. All values with a check mark beside the name are shown in the view. To remove the column, select the value with the check mark.
   - Add / Remove Columns > Reorder Columns – This opens the Global View Preferences window. You can reorder the columns in the Order column. See View Preferences for more information.
   - Expand/ Collapse All Groups – This expands/collapses grouped documents. You can also click the +/- sign next to the Group Name.
2. For exporting the document list to a CSV file, see Exporting Documents in a View to a CSV File.

15.2.2. Showing the Review or Approval Status in the Folder View

Adding the Review and Approval Status field to a folder view allows the user to be able to tell at a glance the state of approval for all documents contained in that folder.

These fields can be added (or removed) in all views including search results, my FileHold, or any other list customizable with the users personal view preferences.

To add the review or approval status column to a view on the fly

1. Right-click column header and select Add/Remove Columns.
2. Select Review Status or Approval Status from the list. The Approval Status is added as a column to the view.

To modify the view preferences to add the review or approval status column

1. Go to View Preferences and select the view you want to modify from the list.
2. In the Add Field drop down list, select Approval Status or Review Status and click Add Field.
3. Click OK to save changes.

15.2.3. Setting the Default Cabinet Drawer, Folder Group, Virtual Folder, or Saved Search View

Cabinets, drawers, folder groups, virtual folders, and saved searches can have specific views created and assigned to them so that the views are displayed in a certain way. Administrators can create public views in the View preferences area and then assign the default view to the search. Users can also do this for their "My Saved Searches" and “My Virtual Folders” using personal views.

You can set a default view for a folder but it cannot be made default or forced.

To set the default view for a cabinet, folder, virtual folder, or saved search

1. Create a new view to be used. For folders, cabinets, public saved searches and public virtual folders, administrators will need to create a public view. For personal saved
searches (My Saved Searches) end users can create personal views. See View Preferences for more information.

2. Right click on the folder, cabinet, virtual folder or saved search name and select Set Default View.

3. Select the view you want to use from the drop down list. To use the global default view, select the Use global default view check box.

4. To make this the default view all users, select the Make it the default setting for all users check box.

5. To enforce the use of this view for this saved search, select the Force all users to use this default setting check box.

6. Click OK to save your settings.

15.3. ALERT PREFERENCES

You can set alert preferences so that you are notified when a change occurs to a document or folder. You can view alerts in My FileHold > Document Alerts and/or receive an email alert, if you system has been configured. In order to receive an alert, you must have set an alert on a document or folder. See Setting Document Alerts and Reminders for more information.

The alert preferences allow you to determine which type of change you want to be notified of, such as a document addition, change to metadata, or when a file is checked. Users can also be notified via email and alerts of specific date based events call user defined events. For example, policies must be updated or reinstated at least once every three years. The policy team would like to review the documents 60 days before the three year anniversary. The event can be set up so that every three years, the owner of the policy will be notified 60 days prior to the policy expiry date. User defined events are set on the document schema by the library administrator. For more information, see the Library Administration Guide.

Some, none, or all of these settings may be determined and/or enforced by your system administrator. See your system administrator for details.

TO SET ALERT PREFERENCES

1. Do one of the following:
   - In FDA, go to File > Preferences and Settings > View Preferences.
   - In Web Client, right-click on My FileHold and select View Preferences.
   - In the Web Client, go to Administration Panel > My FileHold > View Preferences.

2. In the My Alert Setting window, select the following folder alert options:
   - New documents/versions are added to folders I have subscribed to.
   - Documents are transferred to folders I have subscribed to.
   - Documents are deleted from folders I have subscribed to.

3. Select the following File (document) alert preferences:
   - A new version of a document I have subscribed to is checked-in.
   - Metadata values are updated for a document I have subscribed to.

4. In the Email Alert Preferences, select the check box if you wish to receive an email in addition to displaying alerts in the My FileHold > Document Alerts area.

5. Enter the email address that the alert should be emailed to.
6. Select an alert frequency:
   - Send email immediately – Sends the email as soon as the change is made.
   - Send a daily summary – Sends the email once per day with a summary of all the alerts.
   - Send a weekly summary – Sends the email once per week with a summary of all the alerts.

7. In the Reminders area, select the Send email... check box to have reminders emailed to the specified account.

8. Select an email reminder frequency:
   - Send email immediately.
   - Send a daily summary.

9. Click OK.

15.4. WORKFLOW PREFERENCES

You can set preferences to be notified via email when certain workflow events involving you occur and delegate your tasks to someone else if you are away from the office for a period of time.

Workflow tasks can be viewed in Reviews and Approvals > My Tasks list. See Viewing Workflow Tasks for more information.

Some, none or all of these settings may be determined and/or enforced by your system administrator. See your system administrator for details.

TO SET WORKFLOW ALERTS

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the FDA, go to File > Preferences and Settings > Workflow Preferences
   - In the Web Client, right-click on Reviews and Approvals and select My Workflow Preferences.

2. In the My Workflow Preferences window, select the check boxes for the events you want to be emailed for. NOTE: These options may be locked down by your system administrator.
   - A task is assigned or delegated to me
   - A task is assigned to me is overdue
   - A task assigned to me is overridden
   - A task assigned to me has been reserved by another participant.
   - A task assigned to me is cancelled
   - A task assigned to me is restarted
   - A document associated with a task assigned to me is added or removed
   - A document associated with a task assigned to me is checked out or checked in
   - If tasks in workflow I am the initiator are overdue
   - Activity is completed for a workflow I initiated
   - Workflow is completed for a workflow I initiated
   - Workflow is restarted for a workflow I initiated
• Document is added or removed from a workflow I initiated

• Workflow is completed for a workflow I am an observer of

• Workflow is restarted for a workflow I am an observer of

• Document is added or removed from a workflow I am an observer of

• Activity is completed for a document that I own

3. In the email alert frequency, set how often you wish to receive email alerts. **NOTE:** These options may be locked down by your system administrator.

   • Send email immediately – Sends the email as soon as the change is made.

   • Send a daily summary – Sends the email once per day with a summary of all the alerts.

   • Send a weekly summary – Sends the email once per week with a summary of all the alerts.

4. To automatically delegate your tasks to someone else in the event that you will be unavailable due to a vacation, sabbatical, or illness, select the **Automatically delegate tasks…** check box and click **Find.** To delegate a workflow on a case per case basis, see **Delegating Tasks to Another User.**

   **NOTE:** A library administrator can delegate tasks on a user's behalf. See the **Library Administration Guide** for details.

5. In the Find People window, enter a name or email address and click **Find.**

6. In the Search Result select the user and click **Select User(s).**

7. Click **OK.**

15.5. **FASTFIND PREFERENCES**

FastFind provides search capability from third party windows-based forms applications such as Windows Desktop Applications such as accounting or GIS software. FastFind works in conjunction with the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA). Users can use keyboard shortcut shortcuts that perform searches directly from the chosen application in the document management system to find relevant data instantly.

FastFind is relatively easy to set up and use by most users with some basic instructions; however, FastFind can be leveraged to perform a more dynamic search of the document management system by someone who can work with regular expressions. You can also set up **FastFind templates** to improve your searches from various third party applications.

For example, a search in a Microsoft Word document for the term "FastFind" using the shortcut key CTRL + D, returns the search results in the FileHold Desktop Application. In the example below, there are 97 results found.

FastFind searches can be based on a full text search (file and metadata search) or a quick search. If based on a quick search, it will only search on that specific search parameter and
nothing else in the system (unlike a full text search which will search through everything). Advantages of using up a quick search with FastFind would be to be able to limit the search results. For example, if FastFind was only used to locate an invoice in FileHold from your accounting software, the search results would be limited to what documents would be found using “Invoice Number” quick search. See Quick Searches for more information on configuring quick searches.

**NOTE:** FastFind preferences can only be set in the FileHold Desktop Application. It cannot be set in the Web Client.

Some, none, or all of these settings may be determined and/or enforced by your system administrator. See your system administrator for details.

In order to use FastFind, you must purchase this optional feature. Contact sales@filehold.com to purchase the FastFind module.

**TO SET THE FASTFIND PREFERENCES**

1. In FDA, go to **File > Preferences and Settings > FastFind Preferences.** NOTE: These options may be locked down by your system administrator.

2. To enable FastFind, select the **Enable FastFind** check box.

3. To have the FastFind templates updated when you log onto the document management system, select the **Update FastFind templates...** check box. Read more about [FastFind templates](#).

4. Select the check boxes for the following shortcut key options:
   - **Mouse Search (Alt + S)** – Activates an on-the-fly screen scraper. When this is done a green bar appears in the bottom-left corner of the user’s desktop screen. Users can now start moving their mouse over screen form objects such as data fields or field labels. The text under the current mouse position is captured and displayed in the green bar. If a user wishes to search with the captured text they may left click to invoke the FileHold search. This initiates the Full Text and Metadata search in FileHold and the search results are displayed within the standard search results screen. Pressing the ESC button at any time will stop the mouse search mode.
   - **Selection Search (Alt + D)** – Highlighting a word or string or partial string in a third party application and pressing Alt+D will initiate a Full Text and Metadata search and display results within FileHold application.
Clipboard Search (Alt + C) – This uses a 2-step process to search for documents in the Library. First, you copy any text from the screen to the Windows clipboard using traditional “Copy” menu option or the Alt+C shortcut available in most Windows applications. Next, press Alt+C to use the contents of the Windows clipboard to activate a Full Text and Metadata search in FileHold. Since FastFind uses the contents of the clipboard, any string or partial strings can be copied to the clipboard and searched upon.

Enable screen OCR search (Alt + F) – Allows you to do a search based on the Click to Tag functionality. Once the shortcut key is invoked, you can click on the text on the screen or draw a bounding box (rubber band) around the text. Then a search is performed in FileHold to meet the selected criteria from the screen.

5. In the Search using area, select one of the following:
   - File and metadata — Searches document name, metadata, document contents and file properties
   - Quick search — Searches for only the quick search parameter. Click … to select the quick search. To learn how to create a quick search, see Quick Searches.

6. To activate FastFind templates, select the check box next to the template name. Learn more about creating FastFind templates.

7. Click OK.

15.5.1. Changing the FastFind Keyboard Shortcuts

You can change the predefined keyboard shortcuts to a different shortcut key. You would do this if the default FastFind shortcut key conflicts with another preset shortcut key in the application that you are doing the searching from. For example you can change the mouse search shortcut to Shift + F3 instead of using Alt+S.

To change the shortcut key
1. In FDA, go to File > Preferences and Settings > FastFind Preferences. NOTE: These options may be locked down by your system administrator.
2. Click the keyboard shortcut type you want to change (mouse search, selection search, or clipboard search).
3. In the Change Shortcut screen, change the default keyboard combination and click OK.
15.6. RESET MY PASSWORD (WEB CLIENT)

A locally managed user (non-Active Directory user) can change their password at any time. This section describes the process on how to change a password via the Web Client.

To change your password in the FileHold Desktop Application, go to the user preferences.

Note: If FileHold is synchronized with Active Directory, this option is not available. See your system administrator to change your password if using Active Directory.

**TO CHANGE YOUR PASSWORD USING THE WEB CLIENT**

1. In Web Client, right-click My FileHold and select **Reset My Password**.
2. Enter your current password.
3. Enter your new password twice.
4. Click **Update**. The new password will take effect next time that you log in.
16. WORKING DOCUMENTS

FileHold makes managing the documents that users have downloaded to their local machine easy. These "working documents" can be ones that have been checked out of FileHold for edit or downloaded as local copies for local reference.

When the user wants to clean up the files that they have downloaded or checked out to their local machine they can do so by logging into the FileHold Desktop Client and using the Working Documents tool.

The Working Documents window displays the contents of the default "local folder". It lets users know if the file has been checked out, the local version number and whether it is the last version located in FileHold. This information helps users decide what action to take for each file.

**NOTE:** The "local folder" is the "My FileHold Documents" folder that is automatically created by FileHold when it is installed on a local computer. This is typically under `/My Documents/My FileHold Documents` folder.

In order to see documents that a user may have downloaded to folders other than the default folder, the user can clear the **Show my local working folder only** check box setting. The list of all documents that a user has downloaded or checked out will appear.

Users can then select files one at a time or in groups and using the **Synchronize** button at the bottom of the results screen, choose which local folder(s) clean-up function they would like to perform. Users have 3 functions to select from:

- Get newer version of files from the library — Downloads a more recent version of a document from FileHold to the local folder when the version on FileHold is newer than the one in the local machine.
• Check-in files that I have updated locally — Checks in files that users have updated locally but not yet returned to the system.

• Remove duplicate or older files that I have on my local computer — Checks for files that are duplicated or are older versions of documents that have newer versions available and deletes them from the local folder.

The Working documents list can be accessed when users are disconnected from the server and working offline, however they will not be able to synchronize the files until they are again hooked up to the server. This means that they may not have access to the very latest version of a document or that any updating that they do to a document offline will have to wait until they are reconnected to the server to be updated in FileHold.

TO ACCESS THE WORKING DOCUMENTS TOOL

1. Open the FileHold Desktop Application.
2. Select Tools > Working Documents. The list of working documents appears.
3. Click Synchronize.
4. Select from the options outlined above.
17. WATCHED FOLDERS

Watched folders create a kind of direct line that allows users to place their documents into the watched folders and from there they are automatically sent to the document management system. Users can create as many watched folders as they need. When a user creates a Watched Folder, the files that are placed there are automatically associated with an existing document schema and metadata and then sent either to the Inbox or to a mapped folder in the Library. Files configured to be sent to an existing folder in the Library can be sent ONLY if the schema selected does not have any required fields missing. If the fields are required and the values are missing, the files will go to the Inbox for processing even if a destination folder has been mapped.

The Watched Folder does not perform Auto-filing because in many cases the files will not have completed metadata values associated with them. However, documents can be tagged quickly en masse the Inbox. Once the files are prepared in the Inbox, the user can then click Auto-File in the Inbox to send all the files to their final destination.

Watched folders are typically used in conjunction with scanning stations; however, you can also use this feature to import a large quantity of documents into the system. When scanning documents, you can set an output folder for the batch and then configure the Watched Folder to watch that output folder for any new scanned images. FileHold will automatically import any new documents from the output folder into the Inbox of FDA or configured folder in the Library. A different output folder for each batch type should be created in the scanning software (QSP) as well as a corresponding Watched Folder should be created for each output folder. See the QSP Best Practices for more information on creating batches. Watched folders should be used when you are scanning documents with Full-Text OCR or no OCR batches. For Zonal OCR scanned batches, use the Manage Imports tool.

Watched Folders can only be created in the FileHold Desktop Application (FDA).


TO CREATE A WATCHED FOLDER

1. In FDA, go to Tools > Watched Folders and click Add.
2. In the Browse for Folder window, select the folder that you want to "watch" on your local computer or network drive. For example, select the output folder for a scanned batch of documents.
3. In the Watched Folder Properties window, the Folder Path to the Watched Folder is shown.
4. Select the Delete input files check box to automatically delete the files from the folder that is being watched. This keeps the folder clean and reduces the folder size; this could potentially get quite large if you are scanning a lot of documents.
5. To automatically send the files to a specific folder in the Library, select the Automatically send files to selected folder in FileHold check box and click ... to select a destination folder.
6. To set the metadata for the documents, select the Automatically set metadata for input files check box and select the Document Schema name from the list.
7. Enter the metadata values. You can determine which metadata fields will receive a fixed value for all the documents by selecting the check box next to the metadata field name and entering a value. If the check box is selected and the metadata field is required, a value must be entered into the field. If the check box for the metadata field is not selected, a
value is not required even if the field is required. However, the “Automatically send files to the FileHold Library” cannot be enabled since the required value is missing and will need to be entered in the Inbox. If the metadata field is set to “read-only”, then you cannot select the check box; this field will always use the default initial value set up in the schema.

8. Select the Automatically "Send files" to the FileHold Library to automatically send the files to the set folder location. If you do not select this option, then all files will go to the Inbox instead of being automatically sent to the folder location. This option is not available unless the Automatically set metadata for input files is selected.

9. To delete the files that are successfully imported into the library, select the Delete input files sent to library check box.

10. Click OK when done.


12. To delete a Watched Folder, click the red X next to the Watched Folder name in the Watched Folders list.
18. VIEWING ALL FILES IN TRANSFER

If you are moving a bulk load of files into the system, you can view the files that are in transfer into the document management system. This is helpful when you want to see how the file transfer is progressing, or if you need to pause or cancel a transfer.

In the View Files in Transfer window, you can pause, resume, cancel, or clear completed and cancelled transfers into the system. You can also view only those files that are being sent into the Library at the current time.

To view all files in transfer

1. In the FDA, go to View > All Files in Transfer. The following table describes the functions in the All Files in Transfer View:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>Puts a hold on the transfer of a document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resume</td>
<td>Removes a pause on a document so it can be transferred into the Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel</td>
<td>Cancels a document from being transferred into the Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear Completed and Cancelled</td>
<td>Removes all completed and canceled transfers from the view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include &quot;coming from&quot; library</td>
<td>When enabled, all documents being sent to the library and downloaded from the library are shown. If disabled, only the documents that are or will be sent to the library are shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status: Pending</td>
<td>Shows all documents that pending to be sent to the library with a status of “Scheduled to Send” when enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status: Completed</td>
<td>Shows all documents that have been sent successfully into the library with a status of &quot;Completed&quot; when enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status: Error</td>
<td>Shows any errors that occurred while sending documents into the library with the status of “Failed” when enabled. TIP: Hover over the &quot;Failed&quot; status to see why the document failed to be sent to the library.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19. FILEHOLD COURIER

FileHold customers need to send documents stored in the repository or approval tasks to employees, customers, partners, contractors, or associates who are not licensed users of the FileHold system. Courier allows you to transmit documents for viewing or approving to people inside or outside the FileHold system.

Some typical scenarios where this feature will be used include the following:

- Engineering transmittals
- Contract approvals
- Employee attestations
- Private document lists
- Expense reports

Courier is a “proof of delivery” system where unlike email it is a secure method of sending documents. With email, there is no way to know if the documents ever arrived, if the attachment could be opened by the recipient, and so on. With Courier, it notifies recipients by email of a transmission, but the transaction is fully tracked.

Courier is a pay per use system. Documents can be sent to an enabled FileHold registered user for “free” or customers can prepay for a certain number of uses of the portal by non-registered users. As a “transmission” is sent to a non-registered user, the transmission will be deducted from the amount of Courier license units they purchased.

Customers can purchase Courier licenses in packs. These Courier license packs contain the number of units purchased. Units are consumed when documents are sent out through a Courier process. The number of units consumed in a view or approve action depends on what type of Courier license pack was purchased. For example, viewing a document consumes one unit, but approving a document requires two units. Packs can be priced differently according to volume. Contact sales@filehold.com for Courier license pricing.

The ability to send documents to the easy viewing and approval portal is controlled by a global configuration option. See the System Administration Guide for more information.

The following image is a high level overview of the Courier process on documents for end users.

19.1. INITIATING A COURIER TRANSMISSION

A user with a role of document publisher or higher can initiate a Courier transmission. The only exception to this is if the user belongs to a group that have the “Disable sending to Courier” option enabled. The initiator of the transmission must be the owner of the documents unless the permission setting “Ignore document version ownership when initiating workflows or sending Courier transmissions” is enabled. See the System Administration Guide for more information.
Courier transmissions can be initiated on one or more document. When initiating a transmission, the sender may be able to modify some of the Courier template information such as the name of the transmission, the description, the recipient information, target date, sender notification, and additional options. The transmission cost (number of Courier units reserved for the transmission) as well as the number of remaining units are shown in the Send <Transmission Name> window.

Post-initiation, the status icon in FileHold for the documents changes to a red dot unless the system administrator permission setting “Enable editing document metadata when a workflow or Courier approval transmission is active” is enabled. If enabled, then status icon changes to a red and yellow dot indicating that the metadata can be changed while under the Courier process. See the System Administration Guide for more information on permission settings.

The same Courier template cannot be re-initiated on the same documents that are currently have an active Courier transmission with an approval task. However, the same documents can have a different Courier template initiated on them.

View actions can be transmitted on older versions of a document. Approval actions can only occur on the latest version of a document.

If an approval transmission has been marked as “Not Approved”, the system does not allow a second transmission to be done on the same document version. Instead, a new version of file will have to be added to the system and the Courier transmission re-initiated.

When the Courier process is initiated, Courier license units are held in reserve until the activity is completed. Once the activity has been completed, Courier usage units are consumed. One time usage is given to a specific user for a specific operation. For example, if ten users need to view single document then ten units must be granted. If a single user is given five documents to approve they are granted ten units. Registered FileHold users do not consume Courier license units, only external recipients of the transmission.

All Courier transmission activity is recorded in the Courier transmission log.

**TO INITIATE A COURIER TRANSMISSION**

1. Select all of the documents to go into the Courier transmission. You can locate the documents through a search, a virtual folder, My Favourites, document tray, etc.
   - In the FDA, use the CTRL + click or SHIFT + click to select multiple documents.
   - In the Web Client, select the check boxes next to the document names.

2. Right-click and select Courier > Initiate Courier <template name>.
   - All documents must have the same Courier template as a part of its schema. If all documents do not have the same Courier template in their schemas, then an error message appears stating that the transmission cannot be initiated.

3. The Courier template opens. You may be able to modify some or all of the template details. See the table below for information on the template details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recipients tab</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Enter a name for the workflow template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Enter a description for the Courier template. It is recommended that you enter as many details as necessary so that users will know exactly what this Courier template is for.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Name | Description
--- | ---
Recipients | The recipient’s area is used to assign users to an activity. At least one recipient is required for the Courier template.

Click **Add** to assign a user a task.

In the Add recipients page, select an Activity type:

- **View** — Sends the documents to a user for viewing. A “view” occurs when the document is downloaded through the Courier portal.
- **Approve** — Sends the documents to a user for approving. The user can “approve” or “not approve” the documents as needed in the Courier portal. A signature can also be enforced when approving documents if the **Require approval password** check box is enabled.

Select the Source type and assign the recipients to the activity:

- **External** — Users that do not have registered user accounts and are outside of the FileHold system. Enter the email addresses of the recipients of the activity separated by commas (,) or semi-colons (;).
- **Internal** — Internal FileHold registered users. Select the users or groups in the Details tab and click **Add Group** or **Add User**. Assigned users show in the Current Recipients list.
- **Metadata** — Select the metadata field that contains the email addresses for the users for the assigned activity. In the text type metadata field, multiple email addresses can be separated by semi-colons, comma, or new lines. The address can refer to an external user or a FileHold registered user.

In the Instructions field, enter the instructions to be completed by the recipients in the activity. Click **OK** when done.

The recipient’s activity is added to the list in the template with the action type specified:

- **View**
- **Approve**

Continue to add more recipients and activities to the list by clicking **Add**.

To edit a recipient, click **Edit**.

To remove a recipient, click **Delete**.

### Transmission costs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transmission cost in Courier units</th>
<th>The number of Courier units held in reserve and charged if the transmission is completed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Courier units remaining</td>
<td>The number of Courier units that remain in the purchased licensing packs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Settings tab</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Target date** | Select the *Approval or view due by* check box and enter the number of days and hours the recipient has to complete the activity.  
  - Due date is calculated when the transmission is launched, so this field should be configured for the number of days or hours from launch that the first task will be due. For example, if the task needs to be completed in 5 hours, you would enter 0 days and 5 hours.  
  An exact date and time (fixed) can be specified in the template if enabled. |
|  | To send reminders of the activity, select the *Send reminders* every check box and enter the number of days and hours. |
|  | If the transmission is to expire after a certain time period, select the *Transmission expires after* check box and enter the number of days. After the transmission expires, the documents are no longer accessible through the Courier portal.  
  An exact date and time (fixed) can be specified in the template if enabled. |
| **Sender notification** | Select the *Notify before transmission is overdue* check box to send an email to the sender of the transmission prior to the due by date and time of the activity. Enter the number of days and/or hours. |
|  | To repeat the overdue task email notification for the transmission sender after a specified period of time, enter the number of hours to resend the email in the *Repeat notification every x days and x hours* area. For example, if 8 hours is entered, an overdue email will be sent every 8 hours until the task is complete. If the repeat notification time is not set, the notification is sent only one time. |
| **Options** | Select the *Allow postpone approval* check box to allow documents to be marked as "Approval Postponed" for an approval activity.  
  The "Postpone Approval" option can be used in circumstances where a document cannot be approved because some conditions have not been met but there is nothing wrong with the document itself.  
  In the Courier portal, to postpone on an approval, click *Request Changes*. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select the <strong>Require access password</strong> check box if the user must log into the Courier portal with a password in order to see the transmission. If a password is required to log into the portal, then the first time the user accesses the portal they are required to set their password. If sent to a registered FileHold user, then their password is the same as the FileHold password.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Select the **Require approval password** check box if the user must enter their password to complete the approval process. This is akin to an electronic signature and verifies the approver. |

4. Click **OK** to start the transmission.
5. You will receive a message stating that the transmission has been successfully initiated. Click **OK**.
19.2. VIEWING DOCUMENTS IN THE COURIER PORTAL

A recipient of a transmission will get an email containing details of the transmission along with a link they can use to view the documents in the Courier portal. When the link is clicked, the list of documents they have been given access to view is displayed. The recipient may be required to login to the Courier portal prior to viewing the document list.

NOTE: If the recipient of the transmission is using an email address that is being used in a FileHold user account, then the password to log into the portal is the same as the FileHold user.

There may be an option to “view” the document using the built-in viewer if the format is supported. Supported formats include jpg, jpeg, png, bmp, gif, tif, tiff, docx, and pdf. A View button will appear for any supported document format. There is no configuration required to make the viewer work with Courier. The viewer will open the document in a separate pane. In the viewer you can scroll through pages, zoom in and out, fit width, fit length or whole page.

The information displayed in the portal is configured by the system and/or library administrators. Below is an example of what might be seen by a recipient in the Courier portal.

![Courier Portal Screenshot]

In order to view documents in the natively supported application, they must first be downloaded or viewed using the built in viewer. To download a document, click the document name and click Download. Once the document is downloaded it is considered as “viewed” and the Courier unit held in reserve for this transmission is consumed. Each document downloaded consumes one Courier unit.

The view action icons are the following:

- [ ] — The view action in the transmission is pending.
- [ ] — The view action in the transmission is overdue.
- [ ] — The view action in the transmission is completed.
The sender may suspend viewing of the document after the approval has been completed. If it has been suspended, the following message appears:

Transmission visibility has been suspended.

If a transmission is overdue but not yet expired, the view can still be completed. The view action details can be seen in the Courier transmission report.

19.3. APPROVING DOCUMENTS IN THE COURIER PORTAL

A recipient of a transmission will get an email containing details of the transmission along with a link they can use to approve the documents in the Courier portal. When the link is clicked, the list of documents they have been given access to approve is displayed. The recipient may be required to login to the Courier portal prior to viewing the document list.

NOTE: If the recipient of the transmission is using an email address that is being used in a FileHold user account, then the password to log into the portal is the same as the FileHold user.

There may an option to “view” the document using the built-in viewer if the format is supported. Supported formats include jpg, jpeg, png, bmp, gif, tif, tiff, docx, and pdf. A View button will appear for any supported document format. There is no configuration required to make the viewer work with Courier. The viewer will open the document in a separate pane. In the viewer you can scroll through pages, zoom in and out, fit width, fit length or whole page.

The information displayed in the portal is configured by the system and/or library administrators. Below is an example of what might be seen by a recipient in the Courier portal.

The document needs to be downloaded or viewed prior to being able to approve the documents. To download the document, click the document name and then click Download. If the document format is supported by the viewer, a View button is available in order to view the
document. If documents are not viewed nor downloaded then only the Do not approve and (possibly, depending on configuration) the Request changes buttons appear.

Once the document is viewed or downloaded, the Approve button appears. All documents are approved, not approved, or changes are requested (approval postponed) as a group. Documents cannot be approved individually when in a single transmission.

When a document is downloaded or viewed, each document consumes a Courier unit held in reserve. Once the document has been marked as “Approve”, an additional Courier unit is consumed for each document. If the documents are marked as “Do not approve” with or without first downloading a document, two Courier units are consumed for each document in the transmission. If the document is marked as “Request changes”, then no Courier units are consumed.

When approving documents, comments and attachments are allowed to be sent back to the sender for additional information. The comments and attachment document can be seen by the sender in the Courier transmission report.

When approving documents, you may be required to enter your password. This verifies that the correct person is approving the document.
After the approval is complete, the status icon changes. The approval action icons are the following:

- 🎨 — The document requires downloading prior to marking as approved.
- 🎨 — The approval action in the transmission is pending.
- 🎨 — The approval action in the transmission is marked as approved.
- 🎨 — The approval action in the transmission is marked as approval postponed.
- 🎨 — The approval action in the transmission is marked as not approved.
- 🎨 — The approval action in the transmission is overdue.

If a document is not approved, the actions for any other recipients are immediately cancelled and Courier units are returned if the action has not already completed. A message is displayed when attempting to access a transmission that has been not approved:

“This transmission was not approved by another approver on 11/2/2015 10:35:44 AM and is no longer available. The transmission identifier is 8fd24e24-e6bc-4914-a554-1aa33d390ede.”

If the transmission was marked as “Request changes”, the actions for any other recipients are voided and Courier units are returned if the action has not already been completed. A message
is displayed when attempting to access a transmission that has been already marked as “request changes” (approval postponed).

If a transmission is overdue but not yet expired, the approval can still be completed. The sender may suspend viewing of the document after the approval has been completed. If it has been suspended, the following message appears:

Transmission visibility has been suspended.

The approval action details can be seen in the Courier transmission report.

19.4. COURIER TRANSMISSION REPORT

The Courier transmission report is a list of all the transmissions that are pending, completed, overdue or expired in the system. It provides an audit trail that is maintained each time a Courier transmission is sent and Courier units are reserved or consumed. The report includes a number of items such the transmission name, the recipients of the transmission, the sender of the transmission, the documents involved, the date of transmission and when the transmission is due, and the number of Courier units granted and consumed.

Once the Courier transmission report has search results, the transmission details can be viewed. The Courier transmission detail contains a summary of the transmission, the documents, the recipients, a documents and recipients matrix, and the transmission log.

A sender of a transmission with a document publisher role or higher can access the Courier transmission report.

TO VIEW THE COURIER TRANSMISSION REPORT

1. In the Administration Panel, go to Workflow management > Courier transmission report.

2. Use the filter can be used to narrow down the results. Click the + or – to expand or collapse the filter as needed. See the following table for filter options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filter option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status in the list</td>
<td>The current status of the transmission:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Overdue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cancel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Postponed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Not approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Expired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of transmission:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitted date</td>
<td>The date the transmission was sent:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From &lt;select date&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To &lt;select date&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x days ago</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Filter option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filter option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Due date</td>
<td>The date the transmission is due:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From &lt;select date&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To &lt;select date&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x days from now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completed date</td>
<td>The date the transmission was completed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From &lt;select date&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To &lt;select date&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x days ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completed % range</td>
<td>The percentage of the transmission completed. Minimum value 0, maximum value 100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission name contains</td>
<td>Enter a full or partial name of the transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document name contains</td>
<td>Enter a full or partial name of the document sent in the transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sender</td>
<td>Select the sender of the transmission from the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipient email</td>
<td>The email address of the recipient of the transmission.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click **Apply Filter** to see the search results. Click **Clear Filter** to clear all of the filter settings.

4. The search results are shown in a table below. See the following table for a description of the Courier transmission report columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission name</td>
<td>The name of the Courier template unless changed by the initiator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documents</td>
<td>The documents that are involved in the transmission. If there is more than one document, the number of documents transmitted is show and is hyperlinked to the <strong>Courier transmission details</strong> where the documents can be viewed in the Documents summary area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipients</td>
<td>The name or email address of the recipient of the transmission. If there is more than one recipient, the number of recipients is shown and is hyperlinked to the <strong>Courier transmission details</strong> where the recipient names can be viewed in the Recipients summary area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitted</td>
<td>The date that the transmission was sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due</td>
<td>The due date of the required action (view/approve).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>The date or percentage (%) completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Current status of the transmission:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Overdue (yellow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cancel (red)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Postponed (yellow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Not approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Expired (red)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sender</td>
<td>The initiator of the Courier transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O/T granted</td>
<td>The number of Courier units held in reserve for the transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O/T consumed</td>
<td>The number of Courier units that were consumed after the transmission is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>completed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. To cancel a pending transmission, select the check box next to the transmission name and click **Cancel transmission**.

6. To rename a pending transmission, select the check box next to the transmission name and click **Rename**. Note that the “Allow sender to define” check box must be enabled on the Courier template in order to modify a Courier transmission name. See the *Library Administration guide* for more information.

7. To resend the notification emails to the recipients for a pending transmission, select the check box next to the transmission name and click **Re-send pending**. The notification emails are resent.

8. To export the search results into a CSV file, click **Export all as CSV**.

**TO VIEW THE COURIER TRANSMISSION DETAILS**

1. From the Courier transmission report, click on a **Transmission name** in the search results.

2. The Courier transmission detail is shown. See the following table for the transmission details descriptions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmission Summary</td>
<td>Name of the transmission. This is the name of the Courier transmission template or if the transmission was renamed manually by the sender.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Current status of the transmission:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Overdue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cancel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Postponed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Not approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Expired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitted</td>
<td>The date the transmission was sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due</td>
<td>The date the transmission is due.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expires</td>
<td>The date the transmission expires and is no longer accessible through the Courier portal. If no expiry date was set, this is blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>The percentage of the transmission that is completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sender</td>
<td>The sender of the transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of transmission:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visibility</td>
<td>This field is available when a transmission has been viewed or approved:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Suspended - Document viewing access is removed in the portal. If an approved or viewed transmission expires, the visibility is suspended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Enabled - Document viewing access is available in the portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click <strong>Suspend viewing</strong> to remove document viewing access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click <strong>Enable viewing</strong> to restore document viewing access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documents</td>
<td>The number of documents sent in the transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipients</td>
<td>The number of recipients the transmission was sent to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courier grants</td>
<td>The number of Courier units held in reserve for the transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courier consumed</td>
<td>The number of Courier units used upon completion of the transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission number</td>
<td>The unique identifier for the transmission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documents summary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHID</td>
<td>The unique FileHold ID number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The version number of the document sent in the transmission. Transmissions that have only view activities in the Courier template can be sent on older versions of a document. In this case, the version number is shown. Transmissions that have approval activities in the Courier template can only be sent for the current version of a document. In this case, “Current (version number)” is shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remaining events</td>
<td>The number of view or approval actions left on the documents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipients summary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the recipient. If the recipient is not registered and is considered a Courier user, the email address of the recipient is shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Registered – The recipient is a registered user of FileHold or has an account in the Courier portal. An account in the Courier portal is created for a user if the user requires a password to approve a document. This is set on the Courier template. Courier – The recipient is a Courier user of Courier and is not registered in the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>The email address of the recipient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remaining events</td>
<td>The number of view or approval actions left for the recipient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Any comments entered by a recipient for an approval action.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment</td>
<td>Any attachments added by the recipient for an approval action. Click the attachment name to download a copy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documents and recipients matrix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document name</td>
<td>The name of the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recipient name</td>
<td>The name of the recipient the document was sent to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission type</td>
<td>Type of transmission:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>The current status of the transmission:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Completed – The action has been completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pending – The action has not yet been completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voided – If a document was not approved or approval postponed then all other transmission types are voided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cancelled – The transmission was cancelled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expired – The transmission is expired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Transmission log

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Displays what happened with the transmission:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Notify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Remind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Download</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• DoNotApprove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• PostponeApproval</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User</th>
<th>The name of the sender or recipient or was a system process that completed the action.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recipient</th>
<th>The recipient of the action. May be blank if there is no recipient for the actions such as “Sent”.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document</th>
<th>The FileHold ID of the documents sent in the transmission. May be blank if the document is not part of the action such as “Sent” or “Notify”.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date/time</th>
<th>The date and time of the action.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IP address</th>
<th>The IP address of the recipient. May be blank for certain actions such as “Sent” or “Notify”.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>The status of the action such as “Success”. May be blank for certain actions such as “Sent”.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Details     | Displays any details about the action such as comments or attachment name. May be blank.                                                   |

3. To resend any pending transmissions, click Resend pending notifications. The notification emails are resent to the recipients.

4. To cancel a pending transmission, click Cancel transmission.
5. To return to the Courier transmission report, click Return to the report.
20. WEBCAP – WEB BROWSER SCANNING

FileHold WebCap is a web-based scanning feature that allows remote users to scan documents via a web browser without the need of scanning software installed except for the scanner drivers and the browser connector. Remote users can scan and store documents into the FileHold document management repository from anywhere they have access to the internet and a scanner. Note that WebCap works only with scanners that correctly support the TWAIN driver interface.

This feature is useful for organizations that have many remote offices or many mobile workers who need to scan documents such as contracts, bill of sales, expenses, or work estimates into a document management system. It is especially powerful for companies who want these documents to go into a workflow to automate review and approval processes after they have been scanned.

20.1. USING WEBCAP

WebCap scanning is done via the FileHold Web Client which is a browser based client. The list of supported browsers can be viewed in the FileHold System Requirements. In the Web Client, all scanning and viewing of the documents is done in the Scanner Inbox.

In order to scan images, ensure that you have the TWAIN driver installed on your computer for your scanner. You will also need to install the Twain Web Connector in order for the scanning to work.

The quality of the scan and compression of the final document that is uploaded to the document management repository or saved to the local computer can be controlled in WebCap settings.

WebCap allows pages to be previewed, added, removed, zoomed, de-skewed, rotated, compressed, loaded from, and saved to disk. Documents can be stored in FileHold in TIFF or PDF format.

Documents in the Scanner Inbox are saved to the FileHold server until they are removed. This allows users to log off and come back to the images at a later time without losing them.

In order to start scanning, you will need to:

- Install the correct TWAIN driver for the scanner
- Install the TWAIN Web browser connector
- Connect WebCap to the scanner

**TIP:** Before you make a final scanner selection to use with WebCap you should test WebCap, the scanning workstation, the TWAIN driver, and the scanner together. WebCap supports the TWAIN 2.3 standards, but this is not true for all scanner vendors, on all operating systems, and with all of their models.

**WARNING:** Currently only HTTP protocol can be used with WebCap. WebCap does not work with SSL connections.

20.2. INSTALLING THE SCANNER TWAIN DRIVER

WebCap works with scanners that support the TWAIN driver interface. Using the software that came with your scanner, install the TWAIN driver. If your scanner did not come with TWAIN software for your scanner, contact the scanner manufacturer for support.
20.3. INSTALLING THE TWAIN WEB CONNECTOR

When starting the Web Client and going to the Scanner Inbox for the first time, you will be prompted to install a TWAIN Web connector. Depending on the browser you are using you may receive various messages and pop-ups to install the plug-in.

For example, in Google Chrome, you may see a following message to install “TWAIN Web Connector not found”. You will need to download and install the connector from the link provided in the message.

TO INSTALL THE CONNECTOR
1. Log into FileHold and go to the Scanner Inbox.
2. Click the download link in the browser message to download and install the connector. Follow all prompts to install the Web Scanning connector.
3. Refresh the browser by clicking F5. The connector will load. You are now ready to start scanning.

20.4. CONNECT WEBCAP TO THE SCANNER

WebCap allows you to scan from a web browser into the document management repository or the local computer. Prior to scanning, you will need the TWAIN driver for the scanner and the TWAIN Web connector for the browser installed. You will also need to connect WebCap to the scanner and configure the scanner settings. The scanner settings is dependent upon the type of scanner being used.

You will need to select the scanner you want to use for scanning.

TO SELECT THE SCANNER
1. In the Scanner Inbox, click Select a Scanner.
2. Select the scanner from the drop-down list and click Close.

20.4.1. Scanner Inbox

The Scanner Inbox is where all of the scanned or added images are stored in the Web Client version of FileHold. Documents in the Scanner Inbox are saved to the FileHold server until they are removed. This allows users to complete other functions in the document management system or log off and come back to the images at a later time without losing them.
TO ACCESS THE SCANNER INBOX

1. Log in to the Web Client version of FileHold.
2. Click on the Scanner Inbox in the Library Tree area.

In the Document Viewer area, the thumbnails for the images are shown on the left and the entire image is shown on the right for the currently selected thumbnail. The thumbnail pane can be open or closed.

20.4.2. Scanning, Adding, and Removing Images

Once everything is configured for the scanner, you can now scan images into the Scanner Inbox of the Web Client of FileHold.

With WebCap, you can add, replace, and delete pages as well as clearing the entire document from the Scanner Inbox.

See the table below for a list of functions and descriptions.
### Function Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scan a Document</td>
<td>Scans all documents in the scanner and adds them as an image to the Scanner Inbox. The images appear in the Document Viewer as a thumbnail on the left side. Click on the thumbnail for the full size image which appears on the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace Page</td>
<td>Replaces the selected page with a newly scanned page. The scanner automatically scans and replaces the currently selected page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add a New Page</td>
<td>Allows you to add a new page from the local computer. Click <strong>Browse</strong> and then <strong>Upload</strong> to add the image. <strong>Note that only files types of jpeg, png, bmp, emf, wmf, pcx, targa, psd, wbmp, pcd, j2k, gif (single or multipage), tiff (single or multipage), and pdf</strong> can be added. If adding a multi-page gif, tiff, or pdf, the file is split into multiple pages and converted to jpeg format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete a Selected Page</td>
<td>Deletes the currently selected page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear All Pages</td>
<td>Clears all pages from the Scanner Inbox.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 20.4.3. Navigating Images

Once you have images scanned into WebCap, you can use the various tools to modify how the images are displayed.

See the table above for a list of functions and descriptions.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zoom In</td>
<td>Zooms in on the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoom Out</td>
<td>Zooms out from the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fit to Width</td>
<td>Adjusts the image on the screen to fit the full width of the image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Best Fit</td>
<td>Adjusts the image on the screen so the entire image is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Size</td>
<td>Shows the full image size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate Left</td>
<td>Rotates the image 90° to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate Right</td>
<td>Rotates the image 90° to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate 180</td>
<td>Rotates the image 180°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deskew</td>
<td>Straightens the image so that the text of the image is vertically aligned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Document</td>
<td>Returns to the Document Viewer when a message is being displayed. For example, when the “delete page” or “upload page” message appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous Page</td>
<td>Previous image is displayed in the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Page</td>
<td>Next image is displayed in the document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;page number&gt;</td>
<td>Enter a page number to show the image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20.4.4. Submitting Documents to the Repository

Once the document has been composed, you can submit it to the document management repository for storage.

To submit a document to the repository:

1. After the document is scanned and arranged in the Scanner Inbox, click Submit Document.

2. Select the folder location for the document from the library. The selected folder will be bolded. The last folder used will be selected, if applicable.
3. Click **Next**.

4. In the Submit Settings screen, set the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remove cover page before submitting the document</td>
<td>Automatically removes the first image from the document that is being submitted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear Scanner Inbox after submitting the document</td>
<td>Removes all images from the Scanner Inbox after the document is in the repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi-level image compression</td>
<td>Select one of the following compression levels for black and white or grayscale images:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- CCIT Group 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- CCIT Group 4 (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- LZW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information on compression levels, see <a href="#">Compression Levels for Scanning</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color image compression</td>
<td>Select a compression level for color images:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- LZW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- JPEG 25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- JPEG 50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- JPEG 75% (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- JPEG 90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information on compression levels, see <a href="#">Compression Levels for Scanning</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document file format</td>
<td>Select one of the following</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• TIFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• PDF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Do one of the following:
   • Click **Next** if you are using barcodes to index your documents.
   • Click **Submit** to add the document to the repository.

6. If you clicked **Next**, review the schema and metadata information. Enter a value in any remaining required metadata fields or edit any existing metadata values.

7. Click **Submit**.

8. The document is uploaded to the repository and is shown in the folder with the metadata pane open.

### 20.4.5. Downloading Images

Single images can be downloaded to the local computer. Downloaded images can only be saved as TIFF images.

**TO DOWNLOAD DOCUMENTS**

1. Select the image you want to download from the Scanner Inbox.

2. Click **Download Document**.

3. **Open** or **Save** the image locally. The document is saved to the default download location set in your browser.

4. Click **OK** after the document is done downloading to return to the Scanner Inbox.

### 20.5. TROUBLESHOOTING WEBCAP

- WebCap works with scanners that correctly support the TWAIN driver interface. If you are unable to scan with WebCap, verify that you have a TWAIN driver installed for your scanner. If you are not sure, check with the **manufacturer of the scanner**.

- Ensure you have the TWAIN Web Connector installed for your browser type that you are using with the Web Client.

- If you are experiencing problems with your browser, close the browser window completely and log back into FileHold. If you are still experiencing issues, try an alternate browser. Check the FileHold system requirements page to see which browsers are compatible with WebCap.
21. REFRESHING THE FILEHOLD SYSTEM

If you have made changes in the Library Administration or System Administration areas of FileHold, you will need to update the FileHold Desktop Application by using the Refresh function. This will load your changes into the application.

TO REFRESH THE FILEHOLD SYSTEM

- Go to File > Refresh All.

22. ACCESSING SYSTEM AND LIBRARY ADMINISTRATION

To access the Library Administration or System Administration areas of FileHold:
- In FDA, select Administration > Administration Panel from the menu bar. You will be redirected to the Web Client.
- In Web Client, login and click the Administration Panel link at the top of the screen.

23. VIEWING FILEHOLD REPORTS

You are able to see the reports in the Library tree if the feature has been enabled and you have the correct permissions.

There are two preconfigured reports that can be downloaded from the Knowledge Base:
- Library List Report — Displays the contents of a cabinet.
- System Activity Report — Displays all the logon activities of users.

TO VIEW REPORTS IN THE LIBRARY

1. In the Library, go to Reports > FileHold Reports.
2. Select a report from the list and click Show Report. The Report Manager opens.
3. Select or enter the parameters you want to be shown in the report and click View Report. The report results are shown.
4. You can now export the report into a XML, CSV, PDF, MHTML, Excel, Tiff, or Word file.
24. FILEHOLD HELP

To read a help topic, click a question mark (?) in the window. You will be redirected to the relevant topic in the online help.

You can also access the home page for the online help by selecting Help > Help from the menu bar in the FileHold Desktop Application.
INDEX

A
Add Attachment from FileHold, 11
Add documents, 23
Add File, 4
alert preferences, 166
alerts, 139
disable on folders, 141
mark as read, 140
removing, 140
Auto-File, 23

B
Browse to FileHold, 11

C
cabinet administrator role, 17
cabinets, 89
auto-tagging, 96
managing, 89
calendar, 25
Capture, 157
Check out, 5, 8
Check out and Email, 5
Checked Out Documents, 24
Click To Tag, 116
entering metadata, 117
connection options, 2
Convert to offline, 9
Courier
approving documents, 183
initiating transmissions, 177
overview, 177
Transmission details, 188
transmission report, 186
viewing documents, 182
CSV files
exporting, 110

database lookups, 120
entering metadata, 121
default domain, 3
Delete, 5, 8
Document Alerts, 24
document owner
changing, 132
document publisher + delete role, 16
document publisher role, 15

D
Document Reminders, 25
document tray
clear documents, 144
Document Tray, 143
document URLs, 122
document viewer, 145
full or partial views, 145
documents
! icon, 19
actions and functions, 98
add document wizard, 105
adding, 102
adding emails. See emails
adding from FDA, 104
adding from Microsoft Office applications, 109
adding from Web Client, 105
adding offline documents, 110
alerts, 139
cancel check out, 126
change document owner, 132
checking in, 124
checking in from Microsoft Office applications, 125
checking in multiple documents, 126
checking in/out, 124
checking out, 124
creating shortcuts, 132
deleting, 123
downloading to local folders, 134
drag and drop, 103
dragging. See emails
exporting, 133
exporting to CSV file, 110
grey dots, 19
linking, 130
make a local copy, 126
managing alerts and reminders, 139
move or copy, 126
purple dot, 19
rectangle with dots, 19
red dots, 18
red, yellow dots, 18
red, yellow, green dots, 18
reminders, 139
removing links, 131
renaming, 133
setting alerts and reminders, 139
setting destination folder, 123
version history, 135
drawers, 89
managing, 89
E

Edit Destination, 23
Edit metadata, 8
Edit Metadata, 23
electronic documents, 113
electronic records, 113
Email, 5
e-mails
   adding, 106
   adding only attachments, 108
   email and check out, 129
   emailing attachments, 127
   emailing documents, 127, See emails
   emailing links, 127
   extraction rules, 106
   from Web Client, 129
Microsoft Outlook, 129
Microsoft Outlook Watched Folder, 107

F

FastFind
   changing shortcut keys, 170
   clipboard search, 170
   enable, 80
   mouse search, 169
   preferences, 168
   screen OCR search, 170
   selection search, 170
FDA, 1
   accessing, 1
   connection options, 2
   Inbox, 22
   log in, 3
   menus and toolbars, 4
   refreshing, 200
   shortcut keys, 5
FileHold
   about, 1
   accessing, 1
FileHold Desktop Application. See FDA
files in transfer, 176
folder groups, 89
   assigning to a folder, 90
   delete, 91
   edit, 91
   managing, 89
   statistics, 91
folders, 91
   archiving, 95
   auto-tagging, 96
   cloning, 95
   colour, 94
   copying, 95
   creating, 93
   default view, 96
   deleting, 95
   managing, 91
   moving, 96
   properties, 94
   statistics, 96

G

Get a copy, 8
guest user role, 15

H

help, 201
hotkeys, 5

I

icons
   document permissions, 18
Inbox
   shared inboxes, 6
   shared inbox, 22
Inbox, 22

L

library
   cabinets, 89
drawers, 89
   folder groups, 89
   folders, 91
   inbox, 20
   library archive, 21
   library tree, 21
   My FileHold, 20
   recent folders, 20
   reports, 21
   reviews and approvals, 20
   search, 20
   structure, 88
   structure overview, 20
   virtual folders, 21
Library Administration
   accessing, 200
library administrator role, 17
library archive, 142
   manually archiving, 142
   moving documents back to library, 142
   moving objects to archive, 142
   scheduled archiving, 142
Link, 8
Link documents, 5
linking
   documents, 130
local copy
documents, 126
M

Make a local copy, 4
metadata
Click To Tag. See Click To Tag
copying, 122
database lookups, 120
document URL, 113
editing, 122
entering, 111
entering for a single document, 114
entering for multiple documents, 114
FileHold ID, 113
format, 113
has markups, 113
library location, 113
library status, 113
link to a web page, 122
owner, 112
size, 113
type of file, 113
version, 112
metadata pane, 111
Microsoft Office applications, 9
accessing, 1
adding documents, 109
checking in, 125
FOC window, 11
workflow, 46
Microsoft Outlook
adding emails, 106
Move/copy, 8
multiple documents workflow, 36
My Favorites, 24
My FileHold, 24

O

offline documents, 110, 113
organizer + delete role, 16
organizer role, 16

P

passwords
lost or forgotten, 12
reset, 13
user id, 13
PDF Image viewer
closing, 149
delete pages, 148
drag and drop, 148
drag and drop image, 149
insert files, 148
insert image file, 148
modify images, 148
modifying files, 147
printing, 149
publish as PDF, 148
reorder pages, 147
save image file, 149
undocking, 149
permission icons, 18
preferences, 155
publisher + delete role, 16
publisher role, 16

Q

QuickScan Pro, 157

R

read-only role, 15
recent folders, 26
Recently Accessed, 25
Recently Added, 25
reminders, 139
mark as read, 140
removing, 140
Remove from Inbox, 23
reporting services
reports, 200
reviews and approvals, 138, See workflow
roles and permissions, 15

S

scanning. See Capture, See QuickScan Pro
see WebCap, 193
search, 64
"and" connector, 69
"not w/n" connector, 70
"not" connector, 70
"or" connector, 70
"w/n" connector, 70
# phonic, 69
% fuzzy, 69
& synonym, 69
* wildcard, 69
? matches any character, 68
~ stemming, 69
= matches any digit, 68
advanced search, 71
Advanced Search, 64
boolean, 68
contains in db, 65
contains in fts, 65
document URL, 113
drag and drop, 148
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
full text search, 70
general usage, 66
full text search, 70
recent folders, 26
Recently Accessed, 25
Recently Added, 25
reminders, 139
mark as read, 140
removing, 140
Remove from Inbox, 23
reporting services
reports, 200
reviews and approvals, 138, See workflow
roles and permissions, 15
S

scanning. See Capture, See QuickScan Pro
see WebCap, 193
search, 64
"and" connector, 69
"not w/n" connector, 70
"not" connector, 70
"or" connector, 70
"w/n" connector, 70
# phonic, 69
% fuzzy, 69
& synonym, 69
* wildcard, 69
? matches any character, 68
~ stemming, 69
= matches any digit, 68
advanced search, 71
Advanced Search, 64
boolean, 68
contains in db, 65
contains in fts, 65
document URL, 113
drag and drop, 148
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
drag and drop image, 149
full text search, 70
general usage, 66
integrated with external applications, 81
noise words, 66
proximity, 70
quick search, 78, 81
regular saved search, 78
request types, 68
saved searches, 77
search operators, 76
security, 65
simple search, 70
Simple Search, 64
url builder, 83
words and phrases, 69
Send, 23
Send All, 23
Send to > Email, 9
Send to > Email and check out, 9
Send to > Library archive, 9
Send to > Tray, 9
Send to > Virtual folder, 9
Send to FileHold > Add Document, 11
Send to FileHold > Check In Document, 11
Send to FileHold > Send Review / Approval Feedback, 11
senior library administrator role, 17
sign off sheet, 137
System Administration
  accessing, 200
system administrator role, 18

user preferences, 107, 155

version history
  deleting previous versions, 136
document usage, 137
reinstating previous versions, 136
reviews and approvals history, 138
sign off sheet, 137
viewing, 135
viewing metadata edits, 137
viewing previous versions, 135
version properties
  document URLs, 122
view preferences, 161
ad-hoc views, 164
setting default view, 165
workflow views, 165
viewers
  publish as PDF, 153
viewers, 145
annotations, 151
FileHold viewer, 149
level 1, 149
level 2, 149
PDF/Image viewers, 146
viewing
  files in transfer, 176
virtual folders, 86
  adding documents, 86
  creating, 86
  deleting, 86
  removing documents, 87

watched folders, 174
web client, 7
  accessing, 1
  log in, 7
menus and toolbars, 8
Web Client
  reset password, 171
WebCap, 193
  adding pages, 195
  connecting to scanner, 194
downloading images, 199
installing WebCap Twain connector, 194
installing driver, 193
manipulating pages, 196
navigating pages, 196
removing pages, 195
scanner inbox, 194
scanning, 195
submitting to repository, 197
troubleshooting, 199
using, 193
workflow, 27
  1 of X, 47, 49
  adding and removing documents, 38
  adding documents, 39
administration panel workflow status report, 57
  approval postponed, 35
approving documents, 41
  automatic initiation, 40
  automatically restarting, 51
  cancelling, 52
  checked out documents, 42
  checking in documents, 50
  checking out documents, 49
  convert main documents to PDF, 35, 42
  convert to electronic record, 30
dashboard, 59
delegate initiators, 60
delegate participants, 60
delgating tasks, 52
disable refresh of My Tasks list, 53
dashboard, 59
delegate initiators, 60
delegate participants, 60
delgating tasks, 52
disable refresh of My Tasks list, 53
dashboard, 59
force reservation, 47
get a local copy, 50
initiate multiple documents, 36
initiate single document workflow, 29
main documents, 36
manually initiating, 28
multiple document initiation, 38
overriding activities, 63
postpone approval, 41
preferences, 64
removing documents, 40
require password, 34
reserving tasks, 47, 48
restarting, 41
restarting manually, 50
review and approval history, 60
reviewing documents, 44
reviews and approvals history, 138
sign off sheet, 137
sign-off sheet, 53
status report, 53, 54
supporting documents, 36
tasks, 40
undo reservations, 49
workflow change log, 58
workflow preferences, 167
working documents, 172